



GREAT YARMOUTH
BOROUGH COUNCIL

Governance Committee

Date: Tuesday, 01 March 2016

Time: 14:00

Venue: Supper Room

Address: Town Hall, Hall Plain, Great Yarmouth, NR30 2QF

AGENDA

Open to Public and Press

1 APOLOGIES FOR ABSENCE

To receive any apologies for absence.

2 DECLARATIONS OF INTEREST

You have a Disclosable Pecuniary Interest in a matter to be discussed if it relates to something on your Register of Interests form. You must declare the interest and leave the room while the matter is dealt with.

You have a Personal Interest in a matter to be discussed if it affects

- your well being or financial position
- that of your family or close friends
- that of a club or society in which you have a management role
- that of another public body of which you are a member to a greater extent than others in your ward.

You must declare a personal interest but can speak and vote on the matter.

Whenever you declare an interest you must say why the interest arises, so that it can be included in the minutes.

3	<u>MINUTES</u>	3 - 6
	To approve the minutes of the meeting held 2 February 2016.	
4	<u>PROPOSED COMMITTEE STRUCTURE</u>	7 - 24
	Details Attached.	
5	<u>CONSTITUTION CHANGES</u>	25 - 306
	An early draft copy of the Constitution for members consideration is attached	
6	<u>SCHEME OF DELEGATION</u>	307 - 316
	Details Attached from current Constitution.	
7	<u>OUTSIDE BODIES</u>	
	To be tabled	
8	<u>ANY OTHER BUSINESS</u>	
	To consider any other business as may be determined by the Chairman of the meeting as being of sufficient urgency to warrant consideration.	

Governance Committee

Minutes

Tuesday, 02 February 2016 at 14:00

PRESENT :

Councillor Plant (In the Chair), Councillors Annison, Carpenter, Grey, Myers, Thirtle, T Wainwright, Walker and Williamson.

Also in attendance :

Mrs S Oxtoby (Interim Chief Executive Officer), Mr D Johnson (nplaw), Mr R Hodds (Cabinet Secretary) and Mr J Cade (Consultant).

1 MINUTES

The Minutes of the meeting held on the 18 January 2016 were confirmed.

2 MATTERS ARISING

a) Independent Remuneration Panel.

Members were reminded that Council at its last meeting had agreed to the establishment of an Independent Remuneration Panel to consider Members Allowances and that the panel currently set up by North Norfolk District Council would also be the panel to look at the GYBC Members allowances.

3 ISSUES ARISING FROM THE LAST MEETING

a) Committee Chairs

Members were advised that the current Constitution provides for the Council to appoint all Committee Chairs at its AGM, and it has full discretion as to these appointments and there is no underlying legal obligation. At the last meeting it was suggested that the Appointment of Chairs and new Constitution should take into account the relative Membership of each of the Council Party groups. David Johnson reported that the new Constitution could in principle embody this proposal.

The Leader also asked the Committee to consider whether it would be appropriate for the Appointment of Chairs to be decided at the relevant Committee Meetings.

The Committee agreed that both the options to nominate Chairs through the Widdicombe procedure or by individual Committees selecting their own Chairs should

be determined by Full Council.

b) Escalation Procedure

David Johnson reported that each function and decision of the Authority will in the new Constitution be allocated to the Full Council or to one of the Committees. Members may consider it desirable that a decision of particular significance is in exceptional cases escalated to either a Policy and Resources Committee or to Full Council.

The Committee agreed that the trigger for such escalation should be based on the current practice of the present Scrutiny Committee criteria where by any issue to be escalated to either a Policy and Resources Committee or to Full Council may only be implemented if 3 Members of Council wish this to happen and that any proposal to escalate an item must be carried out before the relevant Committee meets.

c) Particular Committees

David Johnson reported that the Monitoring Officer may well have to consider and advise upon whether certain Committee functions might be exempt from either any proposed escalation procedure. The decisions of Committees making determination effecting people rights or exercising quasi-judicial functions might be opened up to legal challenge on administrative law grounds if the decision making was perceived to be influenced by political considerations.

d) New Committees and Terms of Reference.

Following the Committees discussions at the last meeting, Members considered the report which proposed the following Committees with specific Terms of Reference, namely :-

- Council
- Policy General Purposes and Resources Committee
- Economic Growth and Commercialisation Committee
- Neighbourhoods Housing and Environment Committee
- Tourism, Culture and Heritage Committee

Members were also reminded that the following regulatory Committees would also be appointed namely :-

- Appeals Committee
- Licensing Committee
- Development Control Committee
- Audit and Risk Committee
- Standards Committee

Members were advised that it was proposed that there would be no change to the current arrangements for Terms of Reference in respect of the above regulatory Committees.

Councillor Myers on behalf of the Independent Group tabled his proposals for a Committee system which proposed 5 Committees with Sub Working Groups as follows :-

- Economic Development, Regeneration Committee
- Environmental Health Committee
- Neighbourhood Committee (Health and Well being)
- Housing and Benefits Committee
- Finance and General Purposes Committee
- Oversight Committee

Councillor Myers also proposed that meetings should meet on a six weekly cycle and that the Oversight Committee should be allowed to make recommendations which are seen to improve the functions of the other Committees. The Independent Group had also submitted details of their proposed financial implications for the introduction of a Committee system.

Councillor Grey advised the meeting that she did not need to pass round the UKIP groups proposals as they were broadly similar to the Independence Group the main difference being Committee titles, however they did not include a Scrutiny Group as Committees should be self-scrutinising.

The Chairman tabled the Conservative Groups proposals for a Committee structure which included a Policy and General Purposes Committee with proposed Committees to be called Economic Development; Homes and Community; Environment; Transformation; and Resources reporting direct to Policy and General Purposes Committee. There would also be an Audit and Risk Oversight Committee which would report direct to Council, and the regulatory Committees of Development Control Licensing Standards would remain. The issue of Outside Bodies would report direct to the Policy and General Purposes Committee. The Conservative Group were proposing that Committee decision powers threshold would be £50,000 whilst it was proposed that the Policy and Resources Committee could make decisions up to £100,000.

In a response to a question from Councillor Walker the Interim Chief Executive Officer confirmed that it would be best practice for the Council to appoint an Audit and Risk Committee.

In discussing the proposals, the Governance Committee agreed that the spending threshold for all Committees should be set at £100,000.

The Interim Chief Executive Officer should set up a Constitutional Working Party to review and have an oversight of the Councils Constitution and it was agreed that the Members of the current Governance Committee should form the Membership of a Constitutional Working Party.

Councillor Williamson suggested that the Appointment of Representatives to Outside Bodies should be subject to the Widdicombe Procedure and the Committee agreed that the issue of Outside Bodies should be considered in detail at the next Governance Committee meeting.

Following the Committee consideration of the proposals from the Political Groups for the Committee structure it was agreed that the Officers should report back to the next meeting with proposals for a Committee structure together with Terms of Reference and functions to be aligned to Committees based on the following structure :-

- Policy and Resources Committee

- Economic Development Committee
- Environment Committee
- Housing Committee
- Neighbourhoods Committee

d) The Constitution

David Johnson presented a summary of the current Constitution accompanied by a brief commentary as to the extent of any changes needed to reflect the new Committee System of Governance. The Governance Committee noted and received the proposed changes as detailed in the report.

e) Emergency Issues

The Governance Committee agreed that emergency issues should be delegated to the Chief Executive Officer in consultation with all Group Leaders.

f) Scheme of Delegation

The Committee agreed that the Scheme of Delegation should be considered in detail at the next Governance Committee Meeting.

The meeting ended at: 15:25

COUNCIL

POLICY & RESOURCES COMMITTEE

ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT COMMITTEE

ENVIRONMENT COMMITTEE

HOUSING COMMITTEE

NEIGHBOURHOODS COMMITTEE

APPEAL PANEL

LICENSING COMMITTEE

DEVELOPMENT CONTROL COMMITTEE

AUDIT & RISK COMMITTEE

STANDARDS COMMITTEE

COUNCIL

All non-delegable functions as defined by the Local Authorities (Committee System)(England) Regulations 2012 including: -

- Making of a Members Allowance Scheme and amending the same.
- Adoption of Members allowances scheme
- Making a request for single member electoral wards to the Local Government Boundary Commission.
- Resolution to change a scheme for elections.
- Making an order giving effect to the recommendations made in a Community Governance Review.
- Making or revoking or amending the following policies, plans and strategies :-
- Crime and Disorder Reduction Strategy.
- Licensing Authority Policy Statement.
- Local Development Framework - Development Plan Documents, Plans and alterations which together comprise the Development Plan.
- Sustainable Community Strategy.
- Policies made under the Gambling Act (including any resolution relating to casinos).
- Capital Programme.
- Capital Investment Strategy.
- Medium Term Financial Plan.
- Treasury Management Strategy.
- Approval of the Council's corporate plan.
- Setting the Council's Budget and Council Tax
- Appointing the Mayor and Deputy Mayor of the Council.
- Appointing the Leader of the Council.
- Agreeing or amending the committee structure, the terms of reference of committees and their size.
- Confirming the appointment of or dismissal of the Head of Paid Service, Monitoring Officer and Chief Financial Officer (Section 151 Officer).
- Confirming the appointment of the Independent Person(s).
- Making, amending, revoking, re-enacting or adopting bylaws and promoting or opposing the making of local legislation including bylaws or personal bills.
- Appointment of the Returning Officer and Electoral Registration Officer.
- Adopting and amending standing orders, Rules of Procedure, Contract Procedure Rules and Financial Regulations.
- All matters which by law are reserved to the Council including: -
- Ombudsman reports where there has been a finding of maladministration with injustice and the report has been rejected
- Statutory officer reports of the Monitoring Officer, Chief Financial Officer and Head of Paid Service and Executive Director's public interest reports.
- Conferring the title of Honorary Freeman and Honorary Alderman.
- Approving the Annual Pay Policy Statement.

- Changing the name of the Borough.
- Significant changes to the Council's Constitution (other than variations to the scheme of Delegation which may be approved by committees within their remits and minor and consequential changes to the constitution which are delegated to the Monitoring Officer (see Scheme of Officer Delegation Post).
- Appointment of representatives to outside bodies.
- Consideration of reports from committees, sub-committees, or any other body constituted by the Council.
- To receive the minutes of committees and sub-committees acting under delegated powers for question and comment.
- Making compulsory purchase orders (other than under planning grounds).
- Making recommendations to the Secretary of State on district boundaries, ward boundaries, electoral divisions, ward or polling districts.
- Any other function which must, by law, be reserved to the full Council.

POLICY & RESOURCES COMMITTEE

Key strategic decisions (other than those which must be determined by the Council) including all decisions which have a major impact on a number of Council services or on the Council as a whole and decisions which are deemed significant in terms of impact on the Council's revenue or capital (to be determined by The Head of Paid Service and/or Section 151 Officer).

- All local authority licensing functions and ancillary matters other than those falling within the remit of the Licensing Committee
- Health and safety functions (otherwise than as employer)
- Making recommendations to the Council on the adoption of bylaws
- Functions relating to parishes, elections and electoral registration
- Functions relating to Polling Station reviews
- Functions relating to Community Governance Reviews
- Making recommendations to Council relating to the name and status of areas and individuals
- Making recommendations to Council on the promotion or approval of a local bill.
- Making recommendations to the Council as to recommendations to the Secretary of State on district boundaries, ward boundaries, electoral divisions, wards or polling districts
- To make recommendations to Council on the budget insofar as it impacts on the role and remit of the Committee.
- Making compulsory purchase orders under planning grounds and/or recommending to Council the making of compulsory purchase orders
- Appropriation of land for planning purposes
- Receiving reports from outside bodies

All key strategic policies to be adopted by the Council (except those which are reserved to Council for approval) including:-

- Commissioning Framework
- Annual Budget Strategy
- Budget and Council Tax Policy
- Staffing Budget
- General Fund Balances and Reserves Policy
- Corporate Capital Strategy and Asset Management Plan.
- Risk Management Strategy, Policy and Guidance.
- Corporate Asset Utilisation and Disposal strategy.
- Anti-Fraud Strategy.
- Financial Strategy.
- Consultation and Communication Strategy.
- Leisure and Culture Strategy.
- Emergency Plan.
- Equalities and Diversity Policy.
- Business Continuity Plan. o Health and Wellbeing Strategy.

- Cleaner, Safer, Greener Strategy.
- Strategy relating to HRA.
- Police and Crime Commissioner
- Other tiers of local government including county council and parish councils
- Formulating the Council's budget proposals and recommending the same to Council for approval
- Formulating the Council's capital programme and recommending the same to Council for approval
- Formulating the Council's borrowing and investment strategy and recommending the same to Council for approval.
- Managing and monitoring the Council's Capital Programme.
- Appointment and dismissal of employees (subject to legislative requirements)
- Terms and conditions of employment.
- Procedures for dismissal of employees (subject to legislative requirements).
- Agreeing secondments pursuant to Section 113 of the Local Government Act 1972.
- Agreeing voluntary severance terms for the Chief Executive and Chief Officers
- Hearing appeals relating to the discretionary elements of pension enhancements for the Chief Executive and Chief Officers where the scheme provides for such a right of appeal.
- Approving resources for the appointment of a designated independent person.
- Approving human resources procedures and policies
- Pensions and superannuation

Operational decision making in respect of the following: -

- Procurement.
- Transformation Programmes.
- Organisational Development.
- Member Development.
- Member and Civic Services.
- Strategic Risk Management.
- Audit Issues (other than matters falling within the remit of the Audit and Accounts Committee).
- Major Projects.
- Strategic Commissioning including Decommissioning.
- Asset Management.

Staffing and resourcing issues for the following service areas:

- Policy and Commissioning.
- Human Resources (staffing and resources)
- Democratic Services.
- Financial Services

- Revenues and Benefits.
- Performance Management.
- Administrative Services.
- Audit.

Approval of payments or other benefits for maladministration under s92 of the Local Government Act 2000, except where it relates to a matter falling within the remit of the Planning Committee or is dealt with by Officers acting under delegated powers.

To approve the write-off of any outstanding debt above the delegated limit of £???.

Making recommendations to the Council on standing orders relating to contracts and financial regulations.

All cross cutting matters across the Council and any matter/issue not expressly delegated to another Committee.

Receiving reports from outside bodies

Determining the Council's strategic approach to Strategic Partnerships.

Performance Management

- Overall responsibility for managing and monitoring council performance against approved estimates of revenue expenditure and income
- Overall responsibility for monitoring council performance against locally set performance indicators

Commercialisation

Economic Development Committee

Developing and adopting policies and procedures in accordance with the Council's leisure and culture strategy including: -

- Arts Strategy
- Concessionary Pricing Strategy
- Sports/Physical Activity Development Plans
- Museums and Heritage Strategy

Developing and adopting policies and procedures in accordance with the Council's strategies

Policy development, implementation and review in respect of all areas falling within the remit of the committee

Developing and reviewing the Local Development Framework including Development Plan Documents and Supplementary Planning Documents.

Developing and adopting policies and procedures to underpin the Local Development Framework Core Strategy

Decision making in respect of the following: -

- Economic Development
- Land Charges
- Business Growth
- Town Centre Regeneration
- Tourism
- Transport
- Markets and Street Trading
- Car Parks
- Operation and Management of Industrial Units
- Civil Parking Enforcement
- Acquisition and Disposal of Industrial Units
- Formulation of the Leisure and Culture strategy and to recommend to Council for adoption
- Sports Development
- Museums and Collections
- Parks and Open Spaces

Policy Review and Development

The committee may hold enquiries and investigate the available options for future direction in policy development

Monitoring performance against approved estimates of revenue expenditure and income for services falling within its remit.

Monitoring Service Performance against agreed targets.

Environment Committee

Policy development, implementation and review in respect of all areas falling within the remit of the committee including making recommendations to Council as appropriate in respect of key strategic policies impacting on the role and function of the committee.

Developing policies, procedures and protocols in relation to the Council's emergency plan and responses to flooding (other than planning issues).

Decision making in respect of the following: -

- Emergency Planning
- Refuse Collection
- Cleansing
- Recycling
- Litter Collection
- Street Cleaning
- Grounds Maintenance
- Public Toilets and Amenities
- Trade Waste
- Environmental Health including:-
- Food Hygiene
- Environmental Protection and Improvement
- Dog and Pest Control
- Cemeteries
- Commons regulation and town and village greens
- Contaminated land and statutory nuisances (excluding policy issues)
- The passing of a resolution that schedule 2 to The Noise and Statutory Nuisance Act 1993 should apply in the authority's area
- The power to apply for an enforcement order against unlawful works on registered common land under Section 41 of the Commons Act 2006.
- The power to protect unclaimed registered common land and unclaimed town or village greens against unlawful interference under Section 45(2)(a) of the 2006 Act (Section 45 re- enacted, with amendments, the more familiar Section 9 of the Commons Registration Act 1965 with effect from 1st October 2006).
- The power to institute proceedings for offences in respect of unclaimed land under Section 45(2)(b) of the 2006 Act.
- The power to make a closing order on a takeaway food shop
- Building Control
- Planning (budget, staffing and administration)
- Removal of permitted development rights through Article 4 Direction

Policy development, implementation and review in respect of all areas falling within the remit of the committee including making recommendations to Policy and Resources Committee or Council as appropriate in respect of key strategic policies impacting on the role and function of the Committee.

Developing and adopting policies and procedures in accordance with the Council's strategy including:-

- Contaminated Land Strategy
- Waste Strategy

Functions of the Council relating to complaints regarding high hedges contained in part 8 of the Anti-Social Behaviour Act 2003.

Designation of nature reserves

Developing and adopting policies and procedures in accordance with the Council's Health and Well Being strategies

Policy Review and Development

The committee may hold enquiries and investigate the available options for future direction in policy development

The committee may scrutinize and review decisions made or actions taken by Committees in so far as they have a direct impact on the role or functions of the Committee.

External Review

The committee may invite stakeholders to address the committee on issues of local concern and/or answer questions in so far as it impacts directly or indirectly on the role or functions of the committee:-

- Environment Agency and other statutory bodies (in relation to flooding and other emergencies)

Performance Management

Monitoring performance against approved estimates of revenue expenditure and income for services falling within its remit.

Monitoring service performance against agreed targets

Housing Committee

Strategic Housing.

Formulating the Council's housing capital programme and recommending the same to Council for approval.

Formulating, monitoring and reviewing the Council's Housing Revenue Account and recommending the same to Council for approval.

Determination of:

- HRA Business Plan (including the Asset Management Strategy and Delivery Plan);
- Areas of maximisation of the HRA (ie areas where the HRA could legitimately fund services of benefit to tenants AND the wider community);
- The level and use of surpluses and reserves within the HRA

Neighbourhoods Committee

Designation of conservation areas and areas of archaeological interest

Developing and adopting policies and procedures in accordance with the councils community safety strategy including: -

- Anti-Social Behaviour Strategy
- Domestic Violence Strategy
- CCTV Strategy

Housing Needs Assessment

Anti Social Behaviour Policy (housing)

Community Safety

Community Resilience

Troubled Families

Voluntary Sector

Health and Wellbeing

External Relationships

Public Relations

Social inclusion (young people, older people, debt and rural issues)

Community Cohesion

Safeguarding Children and Young Persons

Police

Voluntary Sector

Community Safety and Crime Reduction Partnership

APPEAL PANEL

To deal with all appeals relating to staffing matters to which there is a right of appeal to elected members (where there is no express right of appeal to members, there will be a presumption that any appeal will be to the appropriate officer).

Membership

A panel of three members. Those members may be drawn from across the whole of the membership of the Council.

LICENSING COMMITTEE

No Change to Current arrangement

DEVELOPMENT CONTROL COMMITTEE

No change to current arrangement

AUDIT & RISK COMMITTEE

No Change to Current arrangement except taking on statutory scrutiny functions

STANDARDS COMMITTEE

No Change to Current arrangement



**GREAT
YARMOUTH**
BOROUGH COUNCIL

CONSTITUTION

Operative: May 2016

W:\Central services\Member Services\Geoff\constitution\Constitution final July 2013.doc

Table of Contents

SECTION A	22
PART 1	
SUMMARY AND EXPLANATION	23
1. INTRODUCTION	24
2. HOW THE COUNCIL OPERATES	24
3. HOW DECISIONS ARE MADE	24
The Committee	24
Corporate Management Board (CMB)	25
Committee Support Members and Committee Advisory Groups	Error! Bookmark not defined.
4. SCRUTINY	25
5. PARTNERSHIP FORUMS	25
6. THE COUNCIL'S STAFF	25
7. CITIZENS RIGHTS	25
PART 2	
ARTICLES OF THE CONSTITUTION	27
ARTICLE 1 - THE CONSTITUTION	28
1.1 Powers of the Council	28
1.2 The Constitution	28
1.3 Purpose of the Constitution	28
1.4 Interpretation and Review of Constitution	29
ARTICLE 2 – MEMBERS OF THE COUNCIL	30
2.1 Composition and Eligibility	30
2.2 Election and Terms of Councillors	30
2.3 Roles and Functions of all Councillors	30
(b) Rights and Duties	31
2.4 Conduct	31
2.5 Allowances	31

ARTICLE 3 - CITIZENS AND THE COUNCIL	32
3.1 Citizens' Rights	32
3.2 Citizens' Responsibilities	32
ARTICLE 4 - THE FULL COUNCIL	33
4.1 Policy Framework	33
4.2 Functions of the Full Council	33
4.3 Council Meetings	34
4.4 Responsibility for Functions	34
4.5 Standing Orders	34
ARTICLE 5 - CHAIRING THE COUNCIL	35
5.1 Role and Function of the Mayor	35
ARTICLE 6 –SCRUTINY COMMITTEE	36
6.1 Appointment	36
6.2 Functions	36
6.3 Duties and Requirements of the Scrutiny Committee	36
6.3.1 Membership	36
6.3.2 Quorum	36
6.3.3 Reports to the Council	36
6.3.4 Chairman and Vice-Chairman	36
6.3.5 Agendas	37
6.4 Powers of the Scrutiny Committee	37
6.5 Call-in	38
6.6 Call-in Exceptions	39
6.7 Reports of Scrutiny Committee	39
6.8 Whipping arrangements	39
6.10 Procedure	40
6.11 Councillor Call for Action (CCfA's)	41
ARTICLE 7 - THE COMMITTEE - LEADER WITH COMMITTEE	43
7.1 Role	Error! Bookmark not defined.
7.2 Form and Composition	Error! Bookmark not defined.

7.3	Leader	Error! Bookmark not defined.
7.4	The Deputy Leader	Error! Bookmark not defined.
7.5	Other Committee Members	Error! Bookmark not defined.
7.6	Proceedings of the Committee	Error! Bookmark not defined.
7.7	Responsibility for Functions	Error! Bookmark not defined.
7.8	Committee Support Members and Committee Advisory Groups	Error! Bookmark not defined.
7.9	Private meetings of the Committee (called “Corporate Management Board (CMB)”)Error! Bookmark not defined.	Error! Bookmark not defined.
ARTICLE 8 - REGULATORY AND OTHER COMMITTEES		44
ARTICLE 9 - THE STANDARDS COMMITTEE		46
9.2	Composition	46
9.3	Role and Function	46
ARTICLE 10 – THE AUDIT AND RISK COMMITTEE		48
10.2	Structure	48
10.3	Purpose	48
(i)	Audit Activity	48
(ii)	Regulatory Framework	49
(iii)	Accounts	49
(iv)	Risk	49
ARTICLE 11 - JOINT ARRANGEMENTS		51
11.1	Arrangements to Promote Well-Being	51
11.2	Joint Arrangements	51
11.3	Access to Information	51
11.4	Delegation to and from other Local Authorities	51
11.5	Contracting Out	52
ARTICLE 12 - OFFICERS		53
Chief Executive (and Head of Paid Service)		53
12.2	Functions of the Head of Paid Service	55
12.3	Functions of the Monitoring Officer	55
12.4	Functions of the Chief Finance Officer	56

12.5 Duty to Provide Sufficient Resources to the Members and Officers and Chief Finance Officer	56
12.6 Conduct	56
12.7 Employment	56
12.8 “Proper Officer” Provisions	57
12.9 Officer Titles	58
ARTICLE 13 - DECISION MAKING	59
13.1 Responsibility for Decision Making	59
13.2 Principles of Decision Making	59
13.3 Types of Decisions	59
13.4 Decision Making by the Full Council	59
13.5 Decision Making by the Committee	59
13.6 Decision Making by Scrutiny Committee	59
13.7 Decision Making by Other Committees and Sub Committees Established by the Council	59
13.8 Decision Making by Council Bodies Acting as Tribunals	60
ARTICLE 14 - FINANCE, CONTRACTS AND LEGAL MATTERS	61
14.1 Financial Management and Contracts	61
ARTICLE 15 - REVIEW AND REVISION OF THE CONSTITUTION	62
15.1 Duty to Monitor and Review the Constitution	62
15.2 Changes to the Constitution	62
ARTICLE 16 - SUSPENSION, INTERPRETATION AND PUBLICATION OF THE CONSTITUTION	63
16.1 Suspension of the Constitution	63
16.2 Interpretation	63
16.3 Publication	63
ARTICLE 17 – THE CIVIL CONTINGENCY CONSULTATION GROUP	64
17.2.Aim	64
17.3.Objectives	64
17.4.Schedule of Meetings	64

17.5.Membership	64
ARTICLE 18 – THE GORLESTON AREA COMMITTEE	65
18.2.Aim	65
18.3.Objectives	65
18.4.Schedule of Meetings	65
18.5.Membership	65
ARTICLE 19 – THE YARMOUTH AREA COMMITTEE	66
19.2.Aim	66
19.3.Objectives	66
19.4.Schedule of Meetings	66
19.5.Membership	66
PART 3	
RESPONSIBILITY FOR FUNCTIONS	68
RESPONSIBILITY FOR FUNCTIONS	69
2. Responsibility for Council Functions	69
Regulatory Council Functions	69
2.1 Development Control	69
2.2 Onward Delegation to Officers	69
2.3 Licensing Functions	69
Licensing Act 2003	70
Gambling Act 2005	71
2.5 Onward Delegation to Officers	72
2.6 Duties and requirements of the Regulatory Committees (ie Development Control and Licensing)	72
2.6.1 Membership	72
2.7 Quorum	72
2.8 Rules of Debate	73
2.9 Regulatory Committees acting as Tribunals	73
2.10 Access to Information	73
3. Responsibility for Executive Functions (These are functions which only the Committee can deal with)	77

APPENDIX A 78

- A. Services and Responsibilities of Directors 78

APPENDIX B 83

- A. Executive Leader's Delegation Scheme Error! Bookmark not defined.

PART 4

RULES OF PROCEDURE 84

COUNCIL PROCEDURE RULES 85

1. ANNUAL MEETING OF THE COUNCIL 85
2. ORDINARY MEETINGS 86
3. EXTRAORDINARY MEETINGS 86
 - 3.1 Calling extraordinary meetings 86
 - 3.2 Business 87
4. APPOINTMENT OF SUBSTITUTE MEMBERS OF COMMITTEES AND SUB-COMMITTEES 87
 - 4.1 Allocation 87
 - 4.2 Number 87
 - 4.3 Powers and duties 87
 - 4.4 Substitution 87
5. TIME AND PLACE OF MEETINGS 87
6. NOTICE OF AND SUMMONS TO MEETINGS 87
7. CHAIR OF MEETING 88
8. QUORUM 88
9. QUESTIONS BY THE PUBLIC 88
 - 9.1 General 88
 - 9.2 Order of questions 88
 - 9.3 Notice of questions 88
 - 9.4 Number of questions 88
 - 9.5 Scope of questions 89
 - 9.6 Record of questions 89
 - 9.7 Asking the question at the meeting 89
 - 9.8 Supplemental question 89
 - 9.9 Written answers 89
 - 9.10 Reference of question to the Committee or a Committee 89
10. QUESTIONS BY MEMBERS 91
 - 10.1 On reports of the Committee or Committees 91
 - 10.2 Questions on notice at full Council 91
 - 10.3 Questions on notice at Committees and Sub-Committees 91
 - 10.4 Notice of questions 91

10.5	Response	91
10.6	Supplementary question	92
11.	MOTIONS ON NOTICE	92
11.1	Notice	92
11.2	Motion set out in Agenda	92
11.5	Scope	92
12.	MOTIONS WITHOUT NOTICE	92
13.	RULES OF DEBATE	93
13.1	No speeches until motion seconded	93
13.2	Right to require motion in writing	93
13.3	Secunder's speech	93
13.4	Content and length of speeches	93
13.5	When a Member may speak again	94
13.6	Amendments to motions	94
13.7	Alteration of motion	95
13.8	Withdrawal of motion	95
13.9	Right of reply	95
13.10	Motions which may be moved during debate	95
13.11	Closure motions	96
13.12	Point of order	96
13.13	Personal explanation	96
14.	STATE OF THE BOROUGH DEBATE	97
14.1	Calling of debate	Error! Bookmark not defined.
14.2	Form of debate	Error! Bookmark not defined.
14.3	Chairing of debate	Error! Bookmark not defined.
14.4	Results of debate	Error! Bookmark not defined.
15.	PREVIOUS DECISIONS AND MOTIONS	97
15.1	Motion to rescind a previous decision	97
15.2	Motion similar to one previously rejected	97
16.	VOTING	97
16.1	Majority	97
16.2	Chairman's casting vote	97
16.3	Voting Method	97
16.4	Recorded vote	97
16.5	Right to require individual vote to be recorded	97
16.6	Voting on appointments	97
17.	MINUTES	98
17.1	Signing the minutes	98
17.2	No requirement to sign minutes of previous meeting at extraordinary meeting	98
17.3	Form of minutes	98
18.	RECORD OF ATTENDANCE	98
19.	EXCLUSION OF PUBLIC	98
20.	MEMBERS' CONDUCT	98
20.1	Standing to speak	98
20.2	Chairman standing	99
20.3	Member not to be heard further	99
20.4	Member to leave the meeting	99

20.5	General disturbance	99
21.	DISTURBANCE BY PUBLIC	99
21.1	Removal of member of the public	99
21.2	Clearance of part of meeting room	99
22.	AUTHENTICATION OF DOCUMENTS	99
23.	COMMON SEAL OF THE COUNCIL	99
24.	SUSPENSION AND AMENDMENT OF COUNCIL PROCEDURE RULES	100
24.1	Suspension	100
24.2	Amendment	100
25.	APPLICATION TO COMMITTEES AND SUB-COMMITTEES	100
	ACCESS TO INFORMATION PROCEDURE RULES	101
1.	SCOPE	101
2.	ADDITIONAL RIGHTS TO INFORMATION	101
3.	RIGHTS TO ATTEND MEETINGS	101
4.	NOTICES OF MEETING	101
5.	ACCESS TO AGENDA AND REPORTS BEFORE THE MEETING	101
6.	SUPPLY OF COPIES	101
7.	ACCESS TO MINUTES ETC AFTER THE MEETING	102
8.	BACKGROUND PAPERS	102
8.1	List of background papers	102
8.2	Public inspection of background papers	102
9.	SUMMARY OF PUBLIC RIGHTS	102
10.	EXCLUSION OF ACCESS BY THE PUBLIC TO MEETINGS	103
10.1	Confidential information - requirement to exclude public	103
10.2	Exempt information - discretion to exclude public	103
10.3	Meaning of confidential information	103
10.4	Meaning of exempt information	103
11.	EXCLUSION OF ACCESS BY THE PUBLIC TO REPORTS	104
12.	APPLICATION OF RULES TO THE EXECUTIVE	104
13.	SPECIAL URGENCY	104
14.	REPORT TO COUNCIL	105
14.1	When the Scrutiny Committee can require a report	105
14.2	Committee's report to Council	105
14.3	Quarterly reports on special urgency decisions	Error! Bookmark not defined.
15.	RECORD OF DECISIONS	105

16. PUBLIC ADMISSION TO COMMITTEE MEETINGS	105
17. PRIVATE MEETINGS OF THE COMMITTEE (CALLED “CBS”)	Error! Bookmark not defined.
18. ATTENDANCE AT PRIVATE MEETINGS OF THE COMMITTEE	105
19. DECISIONS BY INDIVIDUAL COMMITTEE MEMBERS	105
19.1 Reports intended to be taken into account	Error! Bookmark not defined.
19.2 Provision of copies of reports to Scrutiny Committee	Error! Bookmark not defined.
19.3 Record of individual decision	Error! Bookmark not defined.
20. SCRUTINY COMMITTEE ACCESS TO DOCUMENTS	105
20.1 Rights to copies	105
20.2 Limit on rights	105
21. ADDITIONAL RIGHTS OF ACCESS FOR MEMBERS	105
21.1 Material relating to previous business	105
21.2 Material relating to key decisions	Error! Bookmark not defined.
21.3 Nature of rights	105
22 Rights of Access to Meetings and Documents by Councillors	105
Common Law Rights	106
Statute	107

COMMITTEE PROCEDURE RULES 108

1. HOW DOES THE COMMITTEE OPERATE?	Error! Bookmark not defined.
1.1 Who may make executive decisions?	Error! Bookmark not defined.
1.2 Sub-delegation of Executive functions	Error! Bookmark not defined.
1.3 Conflicts of Interest	Error! Bookmark not defined.
1.4 Committee meetings - when and where?	Error! Bookmark not defined.
1.5 Public or Private Meetings of the Committee?	Error! Bookmark not defined.
1.6 Quorum	Error! Bookmark not defined.
1.7 How are decisions to be taken by the Committee?	Error! Bookmark not defined.
2. HOW ARE COMMITTEE MEETINGS CONDUCTED?	Error! Bookmark not defined.
2.1 Who presides?	Error! Bookmark not defined.
2.2 Who may attend?	Error! Bookmark not defined.
2.3 What business?	Error! Bookmark not defined.
2.4 Consultation	Error! Bookmark not defined.
2.5 Who can put items on the Committee agenda?	Error! Bookmark not defined.

FINANCIAL AND CONTRACT PROCEDURE RULES 108

FINANCIAL REGULATIONS AND FINANCIAL PROCEDURES 109

FINANCIAL REGULATIONS 111

General principles	111
A FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT	112
Introduction	112
The Council	112
Committee	Error! Bookmark not defined.

Scrutiny Committee	112
Audit and Risk Committee	114
Standards Committee	114
Other Regulatory Committees	114
The Statutory Officers	114
Head of Paid Service	114
Monitoring Officer	114
Section 151 Officer	115
Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	116
Directors	116
Other financial accountabilities	116
Virement	116
Accounting policies	117
Accounting records and returns	117
The annual statement of accounts	117
B FINANCIAL PLANNING	117
Introduction	117
Policy framework	117
Preparation of the Corporate Plan	118
Budgeting	118
Budget format	118
Budget monitoring and control	119
Resource allocation	120
Preparation of the capital programme	120
Guidelines	120
Maintenance of reserves	120
C RISK MANAGEMENT AND CONTROL OF RESOURCES	120
Introduction	120
Risk Management	120
Internal control	121
Audit requirements	121
Preventing fraud and corruption	121
Assets	123
Treasury Management	123
Staffing	123
D SYSTEMS AND PROCEDURES	124
Introduction	124
General	124
Income and expenditure	124
Payments to employees and members	125
Taxation	126
E EXTERNAL ARRANGEMENTS	126
Introduction	126
Partnerships	126
External funding	127
Work for third parties	127
APPENDIX A: FINANCIAL PROCEDURES	128
1.0 FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT STANDARDS	128

FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT	128
Why is this important?	128
Key controls	128
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	128
Responsibilities of Directors	128
Managing expenditure	129
SCHEME OF VIREMENT	129
Why is this important?	129
Key controls	129
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	130
Responsibilities of Directors	130
TREATMENT OF YEAR-END BALANCES	131
Why is this important?	131
Key controls	131
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	131
Responsibilities of Directors	131
ACCOUNTING POLICIES	132
Why is this important?	132
Key controls	132
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	132
Responsibilities of Directors	133
ACCOUNTING RECORDS AND RETURNS	133
Why is this important?	133
Key controls	133
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	133
Responsibilities of Directors	134
THE ANNUAL STATEMENT OF ACCOUNTS	135
Why is this important?	135
Key controls	135
Responsibilities of Section 151 Officer	135
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	135
Responsibilities of Directors	136
2.0 FINANCIAL PLANNING	136
PERFORMANCE PLANS	136
Why is this important?	136
Key controls	136
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	136
Responsibilities of Chief Executive	136
Responsibilities of Directors	137
Budgeting	137
FORMAT OF THE BUDGET	137
Why is this important?	137
Key controls	137
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	137
Responsibilities of Directors	138
REVENUE BUDGET PREPARATION, MONITORING AND CONTROL	138

Why is this important?	138
Key controls	138
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	139
Responsibilities of Directors	139
BUDGETS AND MEDIUM-TERM FINANCIAL PLANNING	141
Why is this important?	141
Key controls	141
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	142
Responsibilities of Directors	142
RESOURCE ALLOCATION	143
Why is this important?	143
Key controls	143
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	143
Responsibilities of Directors	144
CAPITAL PROGRAMMES	144
Why is this important?	144
Key controls	144
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	145
Responsibilities of Directors	145
MAINTENANCE OF RESERVES	148
Why is this important?	148
Key controls	149
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	149
Responsibilities of Directors	150
3.0 RISK MANAGEMENT AND CONTROL OF RESOURCES	150
RISK MANAGEMENT	150
Why is this important?	150
Key controls	150
Responsibilities of Chief Executive Officer	151
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	151
Responsibilities of Directors	151
INTERNAL CONTROLS	152
Why is this important?	152
Key controls	152
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	153
Responsibilities of Directors	153
AUDIT REQUIREMENTS	154
INTERNAL AUDIT	154
Why is this important?	154
Key controls	154
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	154
Responsibilities of Directors	156
EXTERNAL AUDIT	156
Why is this important?	156
Key controls	157
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	157
Responsibilities of Directors	157

PREVENTING FRAUD AND CORRUPTION	157
Why is it this important?	157
Key controls	159
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	159
Responsibilities of Directors	159
ASSETS	161
SECURITY	161
Why is this important?	161
Key controls	161
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	161
Responsibilities of Directors	162
INVENTORIES	163
Responsibilities of Directors	163
STOCKS	164
Responsibilities of Directors	164
INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY	164
Why is this important?	165
Key controls	165
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	165
Responsibilities of Directors	166
ASSET DISPOSAL	166
Why is this important?	166
Key controls	166
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	166
Responsibilities of Chief Executive	166
Responsibilities of Directors	166
TREASURY MANAGEMENT	167
Why is this important?	167
Key controls	167
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth – treasury management and banking	169
Responsibilities of Directors – treasury management and banking	170
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth – investments and borrowing	170
Responsibilities of Directors – investments and borrowing	171
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth – funds held for third parties	171
Responsibilities of Directors – funds held for third parties	171
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth - imprest (petty cash) accounts	171
Responsibilities of Directors – imprest (petty cash) accounts	171
STAFFING	172
Why is this important?	172
Key controls	172
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	173
Responsibilities of Directors	173
4.0 FINANCIAL SYSTEMS AND PROCEDURES	173

GENERAL	173
Why is this important?	173
Key controls	174
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	175
Responsibilities of Directors	175
INCOME AND EXPENDITURE	176
INCOME	176
Why is this important?	177
Key controls	177
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	177
Responsibilities of Directors	179
ORDERING AND PAYING FOR WORK, GOODS AND SERVICES	180
Why is this important?	180
General	180
Key controls	181
Responsibilities of Head of Resources and Governance.	182
Responsibilities of Directors	182
PAYMENTS TO EMPLOYEES AND MEMBERS	185
Why is this important?	185
Key controls	185
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	186
Responsibilities of Directors	186
Responsibilities of Members	187
TAXATION	188
Why is this important?	188
Key controls	188
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	188
Responsibilities of Directors	188
5.0 EXTERNAL ARRANGEMENTS	189
PARTNERSHIPS	189
Why is this important?	189
General	190
Key controls	190
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	191
Responsibilities of Directors	191
EXTERNAL FUNDING	192
Why is this important?	192
Key controls	192
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	192
Responsibilities of Directors	192
WORK FOR THIRD PARTIES	194
Why is this important?	194
Key controls	194
Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	194
Responsibilities of Directors	194
Bibliography and references:	196

PROCUREMENT

ERROR! BOOKMARK NOT DEFINED.

CONTRACT REGULATIONS PROCEDURES

1. WHO SHOULD READ THIS DOCUMENT Error! Bookmark not defined.

2. SCOPE OF PROCUREMENT PROCEDURES Error! Bookmark not defined.

3. CONTRACT FLOW PROCESS Error! Bookmark not defined.

4. PROCUREMENT STRUCTURE Error! Bookmark not defined.

4.1 *Role of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth in the context of Procurement* Error! Bookmark not defined.

Role of the CBS Error! Bookmark not defined.

4.3 *Role of Services* Error! Bookmark not defined.

4.4 *Training & Development of Staff* Error! Bookmark not defined.

5. AUTHORITIES AND CONTROLS Error! Bookmark not defined.

5.1 *Expenditure Discretion* Error! Bookmark not defined.

5.2 *Procurement Authority* Error! Bookmark not defined.

5.3 *Aggregation of Demand* Error! Bookmark not defined.

5.4 *Segregation of Duties* Error! Bookmark not defined.

6. EARLY INVOLVEMENT OF THE PROCUREMENT SYSTEMS Error! Bookmark not defined.

7. DETERMINATION OF PURCHASE Error! Bookmark not defined.

7.1 *Development of the Specification* Error! Bookmark not defined.

7.2 *Purchase Requisition* Error! Bookmark not defined.

7.2.1 Budget Holder Responsibility Error! Bookmark not defined.

7.2.2 Urgent Requests Error! Bookmark not defined.

7.2.3 Operational Emergency Error! Bookmark not defined.

7.3 *Exceptions* Error! Bookmark not defined.

7.4 *Waiver to Procurement / Tender Procedure* Error! Bookmark not defined.

8. PROCUREMENT PLANNING Error! Bookmark not defined.

8.1 *Existing Contracts* Error! Bookmark not defined.

8.2 *Competitive Offers Outside of an Existing Contract* Error! Bookmark not defined.

8.3 *New Contract Development* Error! Bookmark not defined.

8.4 Procurement Chair Matrix Error! Bookmark not defined.

9. SUPPLIER MANAGEMENT Error! Bookmark not defined.

9.1 *Supplier Selection* Error! Bookmark not defined.

9.2 *Market Research* Error! Bookmark not defined.

9.3 *Use of Supplier Databases* Error! Bookmark not defined.

9.4 *Approved Suppliers Register* Error! Bookmark not defined.

9.4.1 Addition of Suppliers Error! Bookmark not defined.

9.4.2 Analysis Criteria Error! Bookmark not defined.

9.4.3 Removal of Suppliers Error! Bookmark not defined.

10. COMPETITIVE PROCESSES Error! Bookmark not defined.

10.1 *Selection of Potential Suppliers* Error! Bookmark not defined.

10.1.1 Advertising an Enquiry or Tender Error! Bookmark not defined.

10.1.2 Request for Information Error! Bookmark not defined.

10.1.3 Information to Potential Suppliers Error! Bookmark not defined.

10.1.4 Meetings/Discussions with Tenderers Error! Bookmark not defined.

10.2 *Low Value Procedures* Error! Bookmark not defined.

10.2.1 Single Purchase Error! Bookmark not defined.

10.2.2	Single Purchase Procedure	Error! Bookmark not defined.
10.3	<i>Invoice Receipt Prior To Purchase Order Being Raised</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
10.4	<i>Enquiry Procedure</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
10.5	<i>Tender Procedure</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
10.6	<i>EU Procedures</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
10.6.1	Restricted Process	Error! Bookmark not defined.
10.6.2	Prior Indicative Notice (PIN)	Error! Bookmark not defined.
10.6.3	Urgency EU Procedure	Error! Bookmark not defined.
10.7	<i>Late Tenders</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
10.8	<i>Tender Assessment</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
10.8.1	Whole Life Costing	Error! Bookmark not defined.
10.9	<i>Errors and Omissions</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
10.9.1	Error by the Supplier	Error! Bookmark not defined.
10.9.2	Error by the Budget Holder	Error! Bookmark not defined.
10.10	<i>Debriefing Unsuccessful Tenderers</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
11.	NEGOTIATION	Error! Bookmark not defined.
11.1	<i>Post Tender Negotiation</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
11.2	<i>The Process of Post Tender Negotiation</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
11.3	<i>Post Contract Negotiation</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
12.	TYPE OF PURCHASE AGREEMENTS	Error! Bookmark not defined.
12.1	<i>Purchase Order</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
12.2	<i>Purchase Contracts</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
13.	Pricing Of Purchase Orders	Error! Bookmark not defined.
13.1	<i>Pricing Fluctuation</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
13.2	<i>Cost-Plus Pricing</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
14.	TERMS AND CONDITIONS	Error! Bookmark not defined.
14.1	<i>Pre Contract Communication</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
14.2	Letters of Intent	Error! Bookmark not defined.
15.	AUTHORISATION AND ISSUE OF PURCHASE ORDER/CONTRACT	Error! Bookmark not defined.
15.1	<i>Staff Purchases</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
16.	VARIATIONS	Error! Bookmark not defined.
16.1	<i>Purchase Order/Contract</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
16.2	<i>Variation to Cost</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
16.3	<i>Variation to Terms of Contract</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
17.	CANCELLATION OF PURCHASE ORDER/CONTRACT	Error! Bookmark not defined.
17.1	<i>Cancellation Due to Changed Requirements</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
17.2	<i>Cancellation Due to Supplier Non Performance</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
17.3	<i>Cancellation due to Supplier's Request</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
18.	RECEIPT AND ACCEPTANCE	Error! Bookmark not defined.
18.1	<i>Non Compliant Deliveries</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
19.	PAYMENT	Error! Bookmark not defined.
19.1	<i>Standard Payment Terms</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
19.2	<i>Budget Holder's Responsibility</i>	Error! Bookmark not defined.
20.	DISPOSAL OF ASSETS	Error! Bookmark not defined.
21.	AUDIT REQUIREMENTS	Error! Bookmark not defined.

22. ARCHIVE RECORDS	Error! Bookmark not defined.	
23. REVIEW OF MANUAL	Error! Bookmark not defined.	
24. LIST OF APPENDICES	Error! Bookmark not defined.	
Appendix A	Definitions of Key Words	Error! Bookmark not defined.
Appendix B	Procurement Authority Thresholds	Error! Bookmark not defined.
Appendix C	Contract Planning	Error! Bookmark not defined.
Appendix D	sample Purchase Order Form	Error! Bookmark not defined.
APPENDIX E	Exemption / Waiver Form	Error! Bookmark not defined.
APPENDIX F	Waiving of the need for An Professional Indemnity or Performance Bond or Parent Company Guarantee	Error! Bookmark not defined.
Appendix G	Conditions of Purchase	Error! Bookmark not defined.

OFFICER EMPLOYMENT PROCEDURE RULES 229

1. RECRUITMENT AND APPOINTMENT	229
2. RECRUITMENT OF HEAD OF PAID SERVICE	229
3. APPOINTMENT OF HEAD OF PAID SERVICE	229
4. APPOINTMENT OF DIRECTORS	230
5. OTHER APPOINTMENTS	230
6. DISCIPLINARY ACTION	230
7. DISMISSAL	230

PART 5

MEMBERS' AND OFFICERS' 231

CODES OF CONDUCT 231

Introduction to the Code	232
The Code	232
1. Registration and Disclosure of Disclosable Pecuniary Interests	234
2. Disclosure of personal interests	234
1. Introduction	236
2. Standards	236
<i>Standards of services to the public</i>	238
3. Disclosure of information	238
4. Political neutrality	239
5. Relationships	240
<i>Relationships with councillors</i>	240
<i>Relationships with potential employees</i>	241
6. Gifts, hospitality and sponsorship	241
<i>Gifts</i>	241
<i>Hospitality</i>	241
<i>Sponsorship</i>	242

PART 6

MEMBERS' ALLOWANCES SCHEME 243

SCHEME OF MEMBERS' ALLOWANCES 2013/14 244

PART 7

MANAGEMENT STRUCTURE 245

SECTION B 247

PROTOCOL ON MEMBER/OFFICER 247

RELATIONS 247

1. GENERAL 248
2. THE PRINCIPLES UNDERLYING MEMBER/OFFICER RELATIONS 248
3. ROLES OF MEMBERS 248
4. ROLES OF OFFICERS 249
5. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN MAYOR AND OFFICERS 250
6. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN LEADER AND COMMITTEE MEMBERS, SCRUTINY COMMITTEE CHAIRMAN, CHAIRMEN OF OTHER COMMITTEES AND OFFICERS 250
7. OFFICER RELATIONSHIPS WITH PARTY GROUPS 250
8. MEMBERS IN THEIR WARD ROLES AND OFFICERS 251
9. MEMBERS' ACCESS TO INFORMATION, COUNCIL DOCUMENTS AND OFFICER ADVICE 251
10. CORRESPONDENCE 252
11. PRESS RELEASES 253

SECTION C 254

CODE OF CORPORATE GOVERNANCE 254

INTRODUCTION 256

Core Principle 1 - Focussing on the purpose of the Council and outcomes for the community and creating and implementing a vision for the local area 257

Core Principle 2 - Members and officers working together to achieve a common purpose with clearly defined functions and roles 259

Core Principle 3 - Promoting values for the authority and demonstrating the values of good

governance through upholding high standards of conduct and behaviour	262
Core Principle 4 - Taking informed and transparent decisions which are subject to effective scrutiny and managing risk	264
Core Principle 5 - Developing the capacity and capability of members and officers to be effective	266
Core principle 6 - Engaging with local people and other stakeholders to ensure robust public accountability	268
APPENDIX	270
MEMBERS' JOB DESCRIPTIONS	270
COUNCILLOR	271
1. Purposes	271
2. Key Tasks (in order of priority)	271
MAYOR	273
1. Overview	273
2. Ceremonial Responsibilities	273
3. Procedural Responsibilities	273
LEADER OF THE COUNCIL	274
1. General	274
2. Specific Responsibilities will be to:	Error! Bookmark not defined.
DEPUTY LEADER of the COUNCIL	Error! Bookmark not defined.
1. General Responsibilities	Error! Bookmark not defined.
2. Specific duties include:	Error! Bookmark not defined.
CHAIR HOLDERS	Error! Bookmark not defined.
1. Accountability and Leadership	Error! Bookmark not defined.
2. Shared Responsibility as a Member of the Committee	Error! Bookmark not defined.
3. Specific Responsibilities	Error! Bookmark not defined.
4. Specific roles of Chair Holders	Error! Bookmark not defined.
CHAIRMAN of the SCRUTINY COMMITTEE	275
1. General Responsibilities	Error! Bookmark not defined.
2. Specific duties include:	Error! Bookmark not defined.
VICE-CHAIRMAN of the SCRUTINY COMMITTEE	Error! Bookmark not defined.
1. General Responsibilities	Error! Bookmark not defined.
2. Specific duties include:	Error! Bookmark not defined.
MEMBERS of the SCRUTINY COMMITTEE	275
1. General Role and Responsibilities	Error! Bookmark not defined.
2. Specific duties include:	Error! Bookmark not defined.
COMMITTEE CHAIRMAN	275
1. General Responsibilities	275
2. Specific duties include:	275
GROUP LEADERS	277
1. Overview	277
2. Specific duties include:	277

PETITIONS SCHEME	278
Petitions	278
What are the guidelines for submitting a petition?	278
What will the Council do when it receives my petition?	279
How will the Council respond to petitions?	279
Full Council Debates	280
Officer Evidence	280
E-petitions	281
How do I 'sign' an e-petition?	282
What can I do if I feel my petition has not been dealt with properly?	282

GREAT YARMOUTH BOROUGH COUNCIL

SECTION A

CONSTITUTION

PART 1

SUMMARY AND EXPLANATION

GREAT YARMOUTH BOROUGH COUNCIL

CONSTITUTION

1. INTRODUCTION

The Great Yarmouth Borough Council has agreed a revised Constitution (in accordance with the requirements of the Local Government and Public Involvement in Health Act 2007) which sets out how the Council operates, how decisions are made and the procedures which are followed to ensure that these are efficient, transparent and accountable to local people. Whilst some of these processes are required by law, others are matters which the Council has chosen.

The Constitution adopted by the Council follows the Committee model". It came into effect on 9 May 2011. Whilst it largely follows the Constitution operating before 9 May 2011, changes required by the Local Government and Public Involvement in Health Act 2007 have been included.

2. HOW THE COUNCIL OPERATES

The Council is made up of 39 Councillors with one third elected three years in four. Councillors are democratically accountable to the residents of their Wards. Whilst their overriding duty is to the whole community they also have a special duty to all their constituents, including those who did not vote for them.

Councillors, when elected, have to agree to follow a Code of Conduct to ensure high standards in the way they undertake their duties.

The whole 39 Councillors meet together as a full Council at meetings which are normally open to the public. At such meetings, Councillors determine the Council's overall policies and set the Budget and level of Council Tax each year.

3. HOW DECISIONS ARE MADE

The Committee

The Executive is the part of the Council which is responsible for most of the day to day decisions. Those decisions are the responsibility of the Leader and Committee, or are delegated to officers or other bodies. The Committee is made up of the Leader of the Council and several other Councillors. The Leader is elected by the full Council and the other members of the Committee are chosen by the Leader.

The Leader and Committee must make their decisions in line with the overall policies and budget agreed by full Council. If they wish to make a decision which is outside the budget or the agreed policy framework then they must refer this to the full Council for final determination.

4. SCRUTINY

The Scrutiny Committee supports the work of the Committee and the Council as a whole. It allows residents to have a greater say in Council matters by examining and investigating matters of local concern in public. These investigations/examinations lead to reports and recommendations which advise the Committee and full Council on its policies, budget and service delivery. Scrutiny Committee can also monitor the decisions made by the Committee. It can “call-in” any decision of the Committee which has been made but not yet implemented. This provides it with the opportunity to consider whether the decision is appropriate and, if not, to recommend to the Committee that it reconsiders the decision. The Committee may also be consulted by the Committee or the Council on proposed decisions and on the development of policy.

5. PARTNERSHIP FORUMS

In order to give the local community and its residents a greater say in Council affairs, Partnership Forums have been created to help achieve the main aims of the Council. Four Forums, covering Economic, Environmental, Learning and Social areas of activity, are made up of elected Members, Council Officers, representatives from local businesses, other organisations in the community, other Local Authorities and Statutory Authorities and are responsible for the development and implementation of strategies relevant to their areas of responsibility. The meetings are held in public.

6. THE COUNCIL'S STAFF

The Council employs staff (called Officers) to give advice, implement the decisions made by the elected Councillors, and manage the day to day delivery of its services. Some Officers have a specific duty to ensure that the Council acts within the law and uses its resources wisely. A Code of Practice governs the relationships between Officers and Councillors.

7. CITIZENS RIGHTS

Citizens have a number of rights in their dealings with the Council and these are set out in more detail in Article 3. Some of these are legal rights, whilst others depend on the Council's own processes. Advice on an individual's legal rights can be obtained from the local Citizen's Advice Bureau or from the Council. Where members of the public use specific Council services, for example Council tenants, they have additional rights. These are not, however, covered in the Constitution.

Citizens have a right to:

- Vote at local elections if they are registered
- Contact their local Councillor and the Leader of the Council about matters of

- concern to them
- Obtain a copy of the Council's Constitution
- Attend meetings of the Council and its Committees except, where, for example, personal or confidential matters are being discussed
- Petition to request a referendum on a mayoral form of Committee
- Participate in the Council's question time and contribute to investigations by the Scrutiny Committee
- Attend meetings of the Committee where issues are being discussed or decisions made
- See reports and background papers, and any record of decisions made by the Council and Committee
- Complain or submit views to the Council using the Council's Comments and Complaints Procedure
- Complain to the Ombudsman if they think the Council has not followed its procedures properly. This action should only be pursued after first using the Council's own Comments and Complaints Procedure
- Complain to the Council's Standards Committee if they have evidence which they think shows that a Councillor has not followed the Council's Code of Conduct
- Inspect the Council's accounts and make their views known to the external auditor
- Submit petitions, or support petitions, which are then considered in accordance with the Council's Petitions Scheme (Appendix 2).

The Council welcomes participation by its citizens in its work. For further information on your rights as a citizen, please contact the Member Services Manager.

All agendas and minutes of the Council, the Committee and Committees of the Council, unless containing personal or confidential information are available to all citizens on request.

Similarly, all meetings, unless dealing with personal or confidential information, are open to citizens. Copies of agendas for all such meetings are available in the public seating area of the meeting rooms or alternatively from the Member Services Section.

PART 2

ARTICLES OF THE CONSTITUTION

ARTICLE 1 - THE CONSTITUTION

1.1 Powers of the Council

The Council will exercise all its powers and duties in accordance with the law and this Constitution.

1.2 The Constitution

This Constitution, and all its appendices, is the Constitution of the Great Yarmouth Borough Council.

1.3 Purpose of the Constitution

The purpose of the Constitution is to:

- (a) enable the Council to provide an efficient, effective and clear form of leadership to the community, with its long term aim of making the Borough a better place in which to live, work, play and to visit
- (b) (in partnership working with its citizens, businesses and other organisations) help devise and implement policies to reduce unemployment, raise household income, improve people's quality of life, improve people's skills and learning and make the Borough healthier, safer and more attractive
- (c) support the active involvement of citizens in the process of local authority decision making by encouraging them to attend and participate at meetings, to be represented on Partnership Groups and other Forums, and to generally make their views known to the Council using whatever other means are available to them or provided by the Council
- (d) help Councillors represent their constituents more effectively
- (e) enable decisions to be taken efficiently, effectively and without delay
- (f) ensure that the decision makers are clearly and publicly accountable and that their reasons for decisions are explained in full
- (g) ensure that the process for reviewing or scrutinising decisions ensures that no one involved in the making of a decision can take part
- (h) create a powerful and effective means of holding decision makers to public account
- (i) provide the right framework and mechanisms for ensuring that the services provided by the Council are those required by the community, and that the

delivery of those services is regularly reviewed and improved.

1.4 **Interpretation and Review of Constitution**

Where the Constitution permits the Council to choose between different courses of action, the Council will always choose that option which it thinks is closest to the purposes stated above.

The Council will monitor and evaluate the operation of the Constitution as set out in Article 15.

ARTICLE 2 – MEMBERS OF THE COUNCIL

2.1 Composition and Eligibility

- (a) **Composition** – The Council comprises 39 Members (otherwise called Councillors). One or more Councillors will be elected by the voters of each Ward in accordance with a scheme drawn up by the Electoral Commission and approved by the Secretary of State
- (b) **Eligibility** - Only registered voters of the Borough, or those living or working there, will be eligible to hold the office of Councillor.

2.2 Election and Terms of Councillors

The ordinary election of a third of all Councillors will be held on the first Thursday in May in each year beginning in May 2011. In 2013 and in every fourth year thereafter, there will be no regular election.

The terms of office of Councillors will be four years starting on the fourth day after being elected and finishing on the fourth day after the date of the regular election four years later.

2.3 Roles and Functions of all Councillors

- (a) **Key roles** – All Councillors will:
 - (i) collectively through the full Council meetings be the ultimate policy makers and carry out a number of strategic and corporate management functions
 - (ii) represent their communities and ensure that their communities' views are brought into the Council's decision making process (ie become the advocate of, and for, all the constituents in the Ward they represent)
 - (iii) effectively represent the interest of their Ward and of their individual constituents
 - (iv) respond to enquiries, and representations from all their constituents both fairly and impartially
 - (v) be involved in the Council's decision making process
 - (vi) be available to represent the Council on other bodies including external organisations
 - (vii) work in conjunction with the Council and partners on the various partnership bodies
 - (viii) maintain, at all times, the highest standards of conduct and ethics.

(b) **Rights and Duties**

- (i) Councillors will have such rights of access to such documents, information, land and buildings of the Council as are necessary for the proper discharge of their functions and in accordance with the law
- (ii) Councillors will not make public any information which is confidential or exempt without the consent of Council, or divulge information given in confidence to anyone other than a Councillor or others entitled to know it
- (iii) for these purposes, “confidential” and “exempt” information are defined in the Access to Information rules in Part 4 of this Constitution.

2.4 Conduct

Councillors will, at all times, observe the Members’ Code of Conduct set out in Part 5 of the Constitution and take due account of the Protocol on Member/Officer relations also set out in Section B of this document.

2.5 Allowances

Councillors will be entitled to receive allowances in accordance with the Members’ Allowances Scheme as set out in Part 6 of this Constitution.

ARTICLE 3 - CITIZENS AND THE COUNCIL

3.1 Citizens' Rights

Citizens of the Borough have the following rights. (Their rights to information and to participate are explained in more detail in the Access to Information Rules in Part 4 of the Constitution).

- (a) **Voting and Petitions** - Citizens on the electoral roll for the Borough have the right to vote in, and sign a petition to request, a referendum for an elected Mayor form of Constitution
- (b) **Information** - Citizens have the right to:
 - (i) attend meetings of the Council and its Committees except where confidential or exempt information is likely to be disclosed, and the meeting or part of the meeting, whichever is appropriate, is held in private
 - (ii)
 - (iii) see and inspect reports and background papers, and any records of decisions made by the Council and the Committee
 - (iv) inspect the Council's accounts and make their views known to the external auditor.
- (c) **Participation** - Citizens have the right to participate in the Council's question time and to contribute to investigations by Scrutiny Committee
- (d) **Comments and Complaints** - Citizens have the right to make comments and/or complaints to:
 - (i) the Council under its Comments and Complaints Scheme
 - (ii) the Ombudsman after using the Council's own Comments and Complaints Scheme
 - (iii) the Standards Committee of the Council about a breach of the Councillors' Code of Conduct.
- (e) **Petitions** - Citizens have the right to submit petitions, or support petitions, which are then considered in accordance with the Council's Petitions Scheme (Appendix 2).

3.2 Citizens' Responsibilities

Citizens must not be violent, abusive or threatening to Councillors or Officers and must not wilfully harm things owned by the Council, Councillors or Officers.

ARTICLE 4 - THE FULL COUNCIL

4.1 Policy Framework

(a) The Policy Framework means the following Plans and Strategies:

- (i) Best Value Performance Plan
Community Strategy
Crime and Disorder Reduction Strategy
Local Development Framework
Neighbourhood Renewal Strategy
- (ii) Council's Corporate Plan/Statement
Food Law Enforcement Service Plan
Housing Investment Programme Strategy and HRA Business Plan
Local Agenda 21 Strategy
- (iii) Financial Policy
Capital Strategy and Asset Management Plan
Benefits Anti-Fraud Strategy and Prosecution Policy

(b) Budget and Financial Policy Matters ("the Budget")

This includes:

- the allocation of financial resources to different sources and projects
- proposed contingency funds
- setting the Council Tax
- control of the Council's borrowing requirements
- control of the Council's capital expenditure
- the setting of virement limits.

4.2 Functions of the Full Council

Only the full Council will exercise the following functions:

- (a) adopting and changing the Constitution
- (b) approving or adopting the Policy Framework, the Budget and any application to the Secretary of State in respect of any Housing Land Transfer
- (c) subject to the urgency procedure contained in the Access to Information Procedure Rules in Part 4 of this Constitution, making decisions about any matter in the which is covered by the Policy Framework or the Budget where the decision maker is minded to make it in a manner which would be contrary to the Policy Framework or contrary to/or not wholly in accordance with, the Budget
- (d) appointing the Mayor, Deputy Mayor and Leader

- (e) agreeing and/or amending the Terms of Reference for Committees, deciding on their composition and making appointments to them
- (f) appointing representatives to outside bodies
- (g) adopting a scheme of allowance for Councillors
- (h) changing the name of the area or granting the Freedom of the Borough
- (i) confirming the appointment of the Head of Paid Service
- (j) making, amending, revoking, re-enacting or adopting bylaws and promoting or opposing the making of local legislation or personal Bills
- (k)
- (l) all other matters which, by law, must be reserved to Council.

4.3 Council Meetings

There are three types of Council meeting.

- (a) the Annual Meeting
- (b) Ordinary Meetings
- (c) Extraordinary meetings.

These will all be conducted in accordance with the Council Procedure Rules in Part 4 of this Constitution.

4.4 Responsibility for Functions

4.5 Standing Orders

The provisions of Part II of Schedule 2 to the Local Authorities (Standing Orders) (England) Regulations 2001 shall apply.

ARTICLE 5 - CHAIRING THE COUNCIL

5.1 Role and Function of the Mayor

The Mayor, and in his/her absence, the Deputy Mayor, will have the following roles and functions:

Ceremonial Role

Chairing the Council meeting.

The Mayor (and Deputy Mayor) will be elected annually and will have the following responsibilities:

- (1) to uphold and promote the purposes of the Constitution, and to interpret the Constitution, when necessary
- (2) to preside over meetings of the Council so that its business can be carried out efficiently, paying due regard to the rights of Councillors and the interest of the community
- (3) to ensure that the Council meeting is a Forum for the debate of matters of concern to the local community.
- (4) to promote public involvement in the Council's activities
- (5) to be the conscience of the Council (moral sense of right and wrong)
- (6) to attend such civic and ceremonial functions as the Council and he/she determines appropriate

ARTICLE 6 –SCRUTINY COMMITTEE

6.1 Appointment

The Council will annually in May (or as soon afterwards as is reasonably practicable) appoint Councillors to the Scrutiny Committee. The number of members will be determined by the Council.

6.2 Functions

6.2.1 The roles and functions of the Scrutiny Committee are as follows:

- (a) to review or scrutinise existing policy, and develop new policy for approval by the Committee or Council
- (b) to review or scrutinise existing services or functions of the Council
- (c) to hold Executive decision makers to account by the call-in of decisions made, but not implemented, or by a review or scrutiny of decisions already made
- (d) to influence the Executive and Council through reports and recommendations in connection with (a), (b) and (c) above, or in connection with the discharge of any of the Council's functions or any other matter affecting the Borough or its inhabitants
- (e) to be the Council's designated "Crime and Disorder Committee" for the purposes of the Police and Justice Act 2006

6.2.2 These functions are set out in Section 21 of the Local Government Act 2000 and in regulations made under that Act.

6.3 Duties and Requirements of the Scrutiny Committee

6.3.1 Membership

- (a) No Member of the Committee can be a Member.
- (b) No Member can scrutinise or review a decision (whether by call-in or otherwise) with which he/she has been directly involved.

6.3.2 Quorum

The Quorum will be four Members.

6.3.3 Reports to the Council

Once a year the Chairman of Scrutiny Committee must report in writing to the Council on the Committee's work.

6.3.4 Chairman and Vice-Chairman

- (a) The main opposition political group is entitled to the Chair.
- (b) The Vice-Chair will be from a different political group to the Chair.

6.3.5 Agendas

- (a) The Committee shall take account of employees' workloads when determining topics for review, and where a review is likely to last for more than three months, shall also take account of corporate priorities, performance indicators and other corporate issues
- (b) Agendas shall include items put forward by any Members of the Committee.

6.4 Powers of the Scrutiny Committee

6.4.1 The Scrutiny Committee may:

- (a) appoint Sub-Committees or Informal Working Groups
- (b) appoint non-voting co-optees
- (c) hold meetings as and when the Chair or majority of the Committee deem them necessary
- (d) within available resources, require the attendance of Committee Members, Directors and the Head of Paid Service, or invite other Officers or witnesses, or Members of the Council, provided that any person required or invited to attend:
 - is given reasonable notice of the meeting
 - is informed in advance of the nature of the investigation, the reasons for their attendance and the procedure to be followed
 - is treated with respect and courtesy
 - is not permitted to vote on any matter
- (e) require copies of any document to be supplied:
 - which relates to business transacted, or to be transacted, at any public or private meeting of Committee
 - which relates to a decision made, or to be made, by a Committee Member
 - which relates to a key decision made, or to be made, by an Officerbut this does not apply to:
 - draft documents
 - any part of a document which contains exempt or confidential information unless that information is relevant to their consideration.
- (f) (i) review or scrutinise decisions made or action taken by the Borough Council, County Council, Police, Fire Authority and PCT in relation to crime and disorder matters

- (ii) make reports or recommendations to the Borough Council's Committee in respect of such matters referred to in (f) (i) above

6.5 Call-in

6.5.1 The Chair or any three Members of Council (except Committee Members) may call-in a Committee decision within five working days of the publication of the decision.

6.5.2 Subject to paragraph 6, all Committee decisions can be called-in except non-key decisions made by Officers.

6.5.3 The call-in shall be effected by informing the Member Services Manager in writing. The reasons for the call-in must also be stated. If the Monitoring Officer is of the opinion that the call-in process is being abused, he may refuse to deal further with the call-in.

6.5.4 The called-in decision shall be considered by the Scrutiny Committee within 21 days of the call-in.

6.5.5 At the meeting considering the called-in decision the Scrutiny Committee may:

- (a) Do nothing.
- (b) Set out in writing its concerns and refer the matter back to the decision maker, with or without a recommendation.
- (c) Set out in writing its concerns and refer the matter to the Council for debate, with or without a recommendation.
- (d) Require documents or further information to be supplied, or require the attendance of the decision maker, and meet again within ten working days and then resolve to do (a), (b) or (c) above.

6.5.6 If the Scrutiny Committee:

- (a) Does nothing, the decision can be implemented.
- (b) Refers the matter to the decision maker, he/it shall reconsider the decision before it can be implemented and he/it shall inform the Scrutiny Committee of the final decision.
- (c) Refers the matter to the Council, the Council shall debate the matter.

6.5.7 After debate by the Council:

- (a) If the Council agrees with the original decision, it can be implemented.
- (b) If the Council disagrees with the original decision, it may refer the matter to the decision maker, he/it shall reconsider the decision before it can be implemented and he/it shall inform the Scrutiny Committee of the final decision.

(c) If the Council decides on Officer advice that the decision should have been made by the Council the original decision is rescinded and the Council will make a decision.

6.5.8 The decision maker when reconsidering a decision referred to him/it by Scrutiny Committee or the Council may:

(a) Confirm, amend, add to, rescind his/its original decision and/or

(b) Make an entirely new decision on the matter.

6.5.9 Where a call-in is made on the basis that the Committee decision maker has made a decision which he/it has no power under the Constitution or the general law to make, then the Scrutiny Committee must seek the advice of the Monitoring Officer and the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth or their deputies. If either Officer agrees that the decision taker does not have the power to make the decision then the decision cannot be implemented until Council has met and made a decision on the matter. There are no exceptions to this rule.

6.6 Call-in Exceptions

6.6.1 Call-in is excluded if the decision maker believes a decision should be made urgently. This fact must be recorded in the written notice of the decision and the Mayor must agree that:

- the decision should be made urgently and
- the proposed decision is reasonable.

6.6.2 A decision can only be regarded as urgent if any delay caused by call-in would seriously prejudice the Council's interest or the public interest.

6.6.3 In the absence of the Mayor the Deputy Mayor can act.

6.6.4 In the absence of the Mayor and Deputy Mayor, the Head of Paid Service can act.

6.6.5 A report shall be submitted annually in May to the Council by the Monitoring Officer, on the operation of the call-in and urgency provisions.

6.7 Reports of Scrutiny Committee

6.7.1 Where Scrutiny Committee has produced a report which it wishes to be considered by a decision maker the report will be placed before the decision maker at the earliest reasonable opportunity.

6.7.2 Where the decision maker is an Officer, or individual Member of the Committee or a Regulatory Committee and he/it does not intend to accept the Scrutiny Committee's recommendations; he/it must refer the report to Committee for debate before making his/its final decision.

6.8 Whipping arrangements

Members have a duty to declare before the discussion of any matter at a meeting the

existence and nature of a party whip in respect of that item, which shall be recorded in the minutes.

(Party whip means any instruction given to a Councillor who is the Member of a political group as to how the Councillor should speak or vote on any matter, or the application of, or any threat to apply, any sanction because of the way a Member speaks or votes).

6.10 Procedure

The Chair (or other person presiding at the meeting) of Scrutiny Committee shall determine (on the advice of Officers if necessary) procedure and rules of debate at the meeting provided that in doing so he takes into account the Council Procedure Rules, insofar as they are appropriate.

6.11 Councillor Call for Action (CCfA's)

6.11.1 The Crime and Disorder Act 2006 provides for CCfA's in respect of crime and disorder matters; and the Local Government and Public Involvement in Health Act 2007 provides for CCfA's in respect of other matters. (NB Excluded from CCfA's are licensing and planning decisions; vexatious or discriminatory matters; matters which should not reasonably be discussed at Scrutiny Committee; and matters where there is a statutory right of appeal).

6.11.2 The CCfA Protocol will be as follows:-

(a) Notice of a CCfA should be sent in writing to the Member Services Manager. Such notice should include the following information as a minimum:

- a summary of the issue involved
- what outcomes the local member is hoping to achieve
- action already taken, including details of people and organisations already contacted and why this has failed to resolve the issue
- key dates or timescales, if relevant.

The CCfA should be accompanied by any other supporting information, having regard to confidentiality and Freedom of Information issues.

(b) On receipt of a CCfA, the Member Services Manager, will as appropriate:-

- establish that the subject of the CCfA is not an excluded matter
- advise the member concerned of other possible means of resolving the issue or other information requirements.

(c) Legitimate CCfA's will be referred by the Member Services Manager to the Chairman of the Scrutiny Committee and the Scrutiny Officer. Where the Member Services Manager considers the matter to be urgent, it will also be placed on the agenda for the next meeting of that committee. If the matter is not considered urgent, it will be placed on the Scrutiny Work Programme so a way forward and timescale for its consideration can be agreed by the full committee.

(d) It is expected that the member making the CCfA will attend the committee meeting to introduce the issue and answer any questions.

(e) Where a CCfA is listed as a separate agenda item on a committee's agenda, it will be considered as a scrutiny item and the usual processes will be followed (eg the relevant Committee Member(s) and any other internal or external stakeholders will be invited and reports requested, as appropriate).

ARTICLE 7 - THE COMMITTEE - LEADER

7.0 Introduction

As the Council operates a Committee System, no formal legal powers and duties are vested in the Leader under the Local Government Act 1972 or the Local Government Act 2000, However, in practice, all local authorities need to appoint a Leader, who will hold the most significant elected Member role within the Council.

The Leader will be the political head of the Council and the focus for policy direction and community development and also the chief advocate and ambassador for the whole of the Borough.

7.1 Appointment of Leader

7.1.1 The Council's Procedure Rules in Part 3 of this Constitution provide for the Full Council to appoint a Leader of the Council.

The appointment is made at the Council's annual general meeting and the appointment is made for the subsequent Council year.

The person appointed by Council as Leader will automatically be appointed as the Chair of the Policy and Resources Committee.

If the Council does not appoint a Leader, the Leader of the largest political group becomes the Leader.

In the event of a vacancy arising for the position of Leader, the Chief Executive Officer will convene a meeting of the Full Council at the earliest opportunity so that a new Leader can be appointed.

7.1.2 Once appointed, the Leader will hold office until the next Annual General Meeting unless he/she:-

- (a) resigns from the office;
- (b) is no longer a member of the Council;
- (c) is removed from office by resolution of the Council

7.1.3 The Full Council will also appoint at its AGM a Deputy Leader, who is able to exercise the functions of the Leader when he or she is unavailable, or where in the opinion of the Chief Executive Officer, the Leader is incapacitated for such a period of time that the efficient operation of the Council would be significantly impaired.

The person appointed Deputy Leader will automatically be appointed Vice-Chairman of the Policy and Resources Committee.

7.1.4 The provisions in 7.1.2 also apply to the position of Deputy Leader.

7.2 Role and Function of the Leader

7.2.1 To provide a focal point for political leadership and strategic direction for the Council.

7.2.2 To represent the interests of the Council in circumstances where that is necessary.

7.2.3 To ensure effective Corporate Governance.

7.2.4 Promote high standards of corporate governance and ethical conduct throughout the Council including working with all political groups to seek to achieve, where possible, cross party co-operation.

7.2.5 Promote and maintain professional working relationships and mutual respect between all Members and officers.

7.2.6 Work across the Council, particularly with the Chairmen and Vice-Chairmen of its Committees and Sub-Committees, and to be responsible for the development and implementation of the Council's strategic vision for the future, policy framework, budgets and other strategies.

7.2.7 Act as Chairman of the Policy and Resources Committee, fulfil the role of Leader at full Council meetings and carry out as necessary the other functions specified in the Constitution.

7.2.8 Act as an ex-officio non-voting member of ?????????? Committees

ARTICLE 8 - COMMITTEES

- 8.1 The Council will appoint the Committees set out in Part 3 of this Constitution to discharge the functions described. The procedures for these Committees will follow the Council Procedure Rules, so far as appropriate.

ARTICLE 9 - THE STANDARDS COMMITTEE

9.1 The Council will establish a Standards Committee.

9.2 **Composition**

- (a) **Membership** - The Standards Committee will be composed of:
- five Councillors
 - two co-opted (non-voting) members of a Parish Council wholly or mainly in the Council's area (Parish members)

9.3 **Role and Function**

The Standards Committee will have the following roles and functions:

- (a) promoting and maintaining high standards of conduct by Councillors, and co-opted members
- (b) assisting the Councillors and co-opted members to observe the Members' Code of Conduct
- (c) advising the Council on the adoption or revision of the Members' Code of Conduct.
- (d) monitoring the operation of the Members' Code of Conduct
- (e) advising, training or arranging to train Councillors and co-opted members on matters relating to the Members' Code of Conduct
- (f) granting dispensations to Councillors and co-opted members from requirements relating to disclosable pecuniary interests set out in the Members' Code of Conduct
- (g) dealing with complaints of breaches of the Code of Conduct in accordance with the councils agreed arrangements set out below (including consideration of reports into breaches of the Code)
- (h) the exercise of (a) to (g) above in relation to the Parish Councils in the Borough and the members of those Parish Councils
- (i) overview of the handling of complaints and Ombudsman investigations
- (j) .

NB. An independent person is appointed by the full council to act as an impartial adviser on code of conduct complaints.

ARTICLE 10 – THE AUDIT AND RISK COMMITTEE

10.1 The Council will establish an Audit and Risk Committee.

10.2 **Structure**

- (a)
- (b) The Audit and Risk Committee has rights of access to other committees and functions e.g. Scrutiny, Advisory Groups and EMT
- (c) Meets at least four times per year.

10.3 **Purpose**

- (a) The purpose of the Audit and Risk Committee is to provide independent assurance of the adequacy of the risk management framework and the associated control environment, independent scrutiny of the authority's financial and non financial performance to the extent that it affects the authority's exposure to risk and weakens the control environment, review annual Governance Statement, and to oversee the financial reporting process.
- (b) The Committee's Terms of Reference are as follows:-
 - (i) **Audit Activity**
 - To consider the Head of Internal Audit's annual report and opinion, and a summary of internal audit activity (actual and proposed) and the level of assurance it can give over the Council's corporate governance arrangements.
 - To consider summaries of specific internal audit reports as requested.
 - To consider reports dealing with the management and performance of the providers of internal audit services.
 - To consider a report from internal audit on agreed recommendations not implemented within a reasonable timescale.
 - To consider the external auditor's annual letter, relevant reports, and the report to those charged with governance.
 - To consider specific reports as agreed with the external auditor.
 - To comment on the scope and depth of external audit work and to ensure it gives value for money.

- To liaise with the Audit Commission over the appointment of the council's external auditor.
- To commission work from internal and external audit.

(ii) **Regulatory Framework**

- Jointly with Standards Committee, to maintain an overview of the Council's constitution in particular with respect to the risk management and financial control environment.
- To review any issue referred to it by the Chief Executive, a Director, or any council body.
- To monitor the effective development and operation of risk management and corporate governance in the council.
- Jointly with Standards Committee, to monitor council policies on whistle-blowing and the antifraud and anti-corruption strategy and the council's complaints process.
- To monitor the production of the authority's Annual Governance Statement, to consider its contents and to recommend its adoption.
- To consider the council's arrangements for corporate governance and proposing necessary actions to ensure compliance with best practice.

(iii) **Accounts**

- To review the annual statement of accounts. Specifically, to consider whether appropriate accounting policies have been followed and whether there are concerns arising from the financial statements or from the audit that need to be brought to the attention of the council.
- To consider the external auditor's report to those charged with governance on issues arising from the audit of the accounts.

(iv) **Risk**

- To consider the Council's Risk Management Strategy.
- To consider the annual Corporate Risk Management Assessment and associated action plan.
- To act as a point of strategic leadership and support regarding Business Continuity and receive recommendations and assessments from the Business Continuity Workgroup.

ARTICLE 11 - JOINT ARRANGEMENTS

11.1 Arrangements to Promote Well-Being

The Council, in order to promote the economic, social or environmental well-being of its area, may:

- (a) enter into arrangements or agreements with any person or body
- (b) co-operate with, or facilitate or co-ordinate the activities of, any person or body and
- (c) exercise on behalf of that person or body any functions of that person or body.

11.2 Joint Arrangements

- (a) The Council may establish joint arrangements with one or more local authorities and/or their Executives to exercise functions in any of the participating authorities, or advise the Council. Such arrangements may involve the appointment of a Joint Committee with these other local authorities

(b)

(c)

In both of these cases the political balance requirements do not apply to such appointments

- (e) Details of any joint arrangements including any delegations to Joint Committees will be found in the Council's Scheme of Delegation in Part 3 of this Constitution.

11.3 Access to Information

- (a) The Access to Information Rules in Part 4 of this Constitution apply
- (b) If all the Members of a Joint Committee are Members of the Executive in each of the participating authorities then its access to information regime is the same as that applied to the Executive
- (c) If the Joint Committee contains Members who are not on the Executive of any participating authority then the Access to Information Rules in Part VA of the Local Government Act 1972 will apply.

11.4 Delegation to and from other Local Authorities

- (a) The Council may delegate functions to another local authority or, in certain circumstances, the Executive of another local authority

(b)

(c) The decision whether or not to accept such a delegation from another local authority shall be reserved to the Council meeting.

11.5 **Contracting Out**

The council may contract out to another body or organisation functions which may be exercised by an Officer and which are subject to an order under Section 70 of the Deregulation and Contracting Out Act 1994, or under contracting arrangements where the contractor acts as the Council's agent under usual contracting principles, provided there is no delegation of the Council's discretionary decision making.

ARTICLE 12 - OFFICERS

- 12.1 (a) **General** - The full Council may engage such staff (referred to as Officers) as it considers necessary to carry out its functions
- (b) **Chief Executive** – The full Council will engage persons for the following posts:

Chief Executive (and Head of Paid Service)

- Overall corporate management and operational responsibility (including overall management responsibility for all others)
 - Provision of professional advice to all parties in the decision making process
 - Together with the Monitoring Officer, responsibility for a system of record keeping for all of the Council's decisions
 - Representing the Council on partnership and external bodies (as required by Statute or the Council).
- (c) The Council will engage persons to manage and be responsible for the services and functions within their own Service Plans. These persons will be designated **Directors**. Their services and responsibilities may be altered from time to time by the Council
- (d) The current responsibilities of Directors are set out at pages 71 to 73.
- (e) **Head of Paid Service, Monitoring Officer and Chief Financial Officer** - The Council will designate the following posts as shown:

Post	Designation
Chief Executive	Head of Paid Service
Solicitor seconded from nplaw	Monitoring Officer
Director of Resources, Governance and Growth	Chief Finance Officer

Such posts will have the functions described in 12.2 - 12.4 below

The Member Services Manager and Scrutiny Officer will act as Deputy Monitoring Officer.

- (f) **Structure** - The Head of Paid Service will determine and publicise a description of the overall departmental structure of the Council showing the

management structure and deployment of Officers. This is set out at page 250.

12.2 Functions of the Head of Paid Service

- (a) **Discharge of Functions by the Council** - The Head of Paid Service will report to full Council on the manner in which the discharge of the Council's functions is co-ordinated, the number and grade of Officers required for the discharge of functions and the organisation of Officers
- (b) **Restrictions on Functions** - The Head of Paid Service may not be the Monitoring Officer but may hold the post of Chief Finance Officer if a qualified accountant

12.3 Functions of the Monitoring Officer

- (a) **Maintaining the Constitution** - The Monitoring Officer will maintain an up-to-date version of the Constitution and will ensure that it is widely available for consultation by Members, staff and the public. The Monitoring Officer, in consultation with the **Leader of the Council** and Chairman of the Scrutiny Committee, is authorised to make such changes as are necessary to reflect alterations in the Council's management structure and changes in the law insofar as such changes are consistent with Council policy. Any other change to the Constitution will only be approved by the Full Council after consideration by the Standards Committee.
- (b) **Ensuring Lawfulness and Fairness of Decision Making** - After consulting with the Head of Paid Service and Chief Finance Officer, the Monitoring Officer will report to the full Council, or to the Committee in relation to a Committee function, if he/she considers that any proposal, decision or omission would give rise to unlawfulness or if any decision or omission has given rise to maladministration. Such a report will have the effect of stopping the proposal or decision being implemented until the report has been considered
- (c) **Supporting the Standards Committee** - The Monitoring Officer will contribute to the promotion and maintenance of high standards of conduct through provision of support to the Standards Committee
- (d) **Receiving Reports** - The Monitoring Officer will receive and act on reports made by Ethical Standards Officers and decisions of the case tribunals.
- (e) **Conducting Investigations** - The Monitoring Officer will conduct investigations into alleged breaches of the Members' Code of Conduct and make reports or recommendations in respect of them to the Standards Committee
- (f) **Proper Officer for Access to Information** - The Monitoring Officer will ensure that council and Committee decisions, together with the reasons for those decisions and relevant Officer reports and background papers, are made publicly available as soon as possible
- (g) **Advising whether Committee Decisions are within the Budget and Policy Framework** - The Monitoring Officer will advise whether decisions

of the Committee are in accordance with the budget and policy framework

- (h) **Providing Advice** - The Monitoring Officer will provide advice on the scope of powers and authority to take decisions, maladministration, financial impropriety, probity and budget and policy framework issues to all Councillors
- (i) **Restrictions on Post** - The Monitoring Officer cannot be the Chief Finance Officer or the Head of Paid Service.

12.4 **Functions of the Chief Finance Officer**

- (a) **Ensuring Lawfulness and Financial Prudence of Decision Making** – After consulting with the Head of Paid Service and the Monitoring Officer, the Chief Finance Officer will report to the full Council and the Council's external auditor if he or she considers that any proposal, decision or course of action will involve incurring unlawful expenditure, or is unlawful and is likely to cause a loss or deficiency or if the Council is about to enter an item of account unlawfully
- (b) **Administration of Financial Affairs** – The Chief Finance Officer will have responsibility for the administration of the financial affairs of the Council
- (c) **Contributing to Corporate Management** – The Chief Finance Officer will contribute to the Corporate Management of the Council in particular through the provision of professional financial advice
- (d) **Providing Advice** – The Chief Finance Officer will provide advice on the scope of powers and authority to take decisions, maladministration, financial impropriety, probity and budget and policy framework issues to all Councillors and will support and advise Councillors and Officers in their respective roles
- (e) **Giving Financial Information** – The Chief Finance Officer will provide financial information to the media, members of the public and the community.

12.5 **Duty to Provide Sufficient Resources to the Members and Officers and Chief Finance Officer**

The Council will provide the Monitoring Officer and Chief Finance Officer with such Officers, accommodation and other resources as are in their opinion sufficient to allow their duties to be performed.

12.6 **Conduct**

Officers will comply with the Officers' Code of Conduct, and will take due account of the Protocol on Officer/Member Relations, both of which are set out in Part 5 of this Constitution.

12.7 **Employment**

The recruitment, selection and dismissal of Officers will comply with the Local Authorities (Standing Orders) England Regulations 2001.

12.8 **“Proper Officer” Provisions**

Local Government legislation from time to time requires local authorities to appoint “proper Officers” for specific purposes. The Chief Executive and Directors (and any persons authorised by them) are all designated by the Council as the proper Officers for functions within their service plans or terms of appointment.

12.9 **Officer Titles**

Where a particular post is referred to in this Constitution and the post is either abolished or the title changed the officer who takes over responsibility for the function in question shall be the appropriate officer to act in accordance with the Constitution.

ARTICLE 13 - DECISION MAKING

13.1 Responsibility for Decision Making

The Council will issue and keep up-to-date a record of what part of the Council or individual has responsibility for particular types of decisions or decisions relating to particular areas or functions. This record is set out in Part 3 of this Constitution.

13.2 Principles of Decision Making

All decisions of Council will be made in accordance with the following principles:

- to ensure that they are consistent with the Council's duty to improve the economic, social and environmental well being of the community
- to provide high quality services to meet the community's needs which are cost effective and offer best value
- proportionality, that is that the action will be proportionate to the desired outcome
- due consultation and the taking of professional advice from Officers
- respect for human rights
- a presumption in favour of openness
- clarity of aims and desired outcome
- an explanation of all the options considered and full reasons for the eventual decision.

13.3 Types of Decisions

- (a) **Decisions Reserved to Full Council** - Decisions relating to the functions listed in Article 4.2 will be made by full Council and not delegated

(b)

13.4 Decision Making by the Full Council

Subject to Article 13.8, the Council meeting will follow the Council Procedure Rules set out in Part 4 of this Constitution.

13.5

13.6 Decision Making by Scrutiny Committee

Scrutiny Committee will follow the Scrutiny Procedure Rules set out in Article 6.

13.7 Decision Making by Committees and Sub Committees Established by the Council

Subject to Article 13.8, other Council Committees and Sub Committees will follow those parts of the Council Procedure Rules set out in Part 4 of this Constitution as apply to them.

13.8 Decision Making by Council Bodies Acting as Tribunals

The Council, a Councillor and Officer acting as a tribunal or in a quasi-judicial manner or determining/considering (other than for the purposes of giving advice) the civil rights and obligations or the criminal responsibility of any person will follow a proper procedure which accords with the requirements of natural justice and the right to a fair trial contained in Article 6 of the European Convention on Human Rights.

ARTICLE 14 - FINANCE, CONTRACTS AND LEGAL MATTERS

14.1 Financial Management and Contracts

The management of the Council's financial affairs will be conducted in accordance with the Constitution and Financial and Contract Procedure Rules set out in Part 4 of this Constitution. If there is any conflict between these Rules and the main body of the Constitution, the provisions in the main body of the Constitution will prevail.

- 14.2 The Monitoring Officer (and any person authorised by him) is authorised to institute, defend or participate in any legal proceedings in any case where such action is necessary to give effect to decisions of the Council, or in any case where the **Director of Resources, Governance and Growth** (or any person authorised by him) considers that such action is necessary to protect the Council's interests. In addition, Directors (and any persons authorised by them) are authorised to institute legal proceedings in respect of matters falling within their areas of responsibility.

ARTICLE 15 - REVIEW AND REVISION OF THE CONSTITUTION

15.1 Duty to Monitor and Review the Constitution

The Monitoring Officer will monitor and review the operation of the Constitution to ensure that the aims and principles of the Constitution are given full effect.

The Monitoring Officer's key role is to be aware of the strengths and weaknesses of the Constitution adopted by the Council, and to make recommendations for ways in which it could be amended in order to better achieve the purposes set out in Article 1. In undertaking this task the Monitoring Officer may:

1. observe meetings of different parts of the Member and Officer structure
2. undertake an audit trail of a sample of decisions
3. record and analyse issues raised with him/her by Members, Officers, the public and other relevant stakeholders and
4. compare practices in this authority with those in other comparable authorities or national examples of best practice.

15.2 Changes to the Constitution

Approval - Changes to the Constitution will only be approved by the full Council after consideration of the proposal by the Monitoring Officer

ARTICLE 16 - SUSPENSION, INTERPRETATION AND PUBLICATION OF THE CONSTITUTION

16.1 Suspension of the Constitution

- (a) **Limit to Suspension** - The Articles of this Constitution may not be suspended. The rules specified below may be suspended by the full Council to the extent permitted within those Rules and the law
- (b) **Procedure to suspend** - A motion to suspend any rules will not be moved without notice unless at least one half of the whole number of Councillors are present. The extent and duration of suspension will be proportionate to the result to be achieved, taking account of the purposes of the Constitution set out in Article 1
- (c) **Rules Capable of Suspension** - The following rules may be suspended in accordance with Article 16.1:
 - Council Procedure Rules

16.2 Interpretation

The ruling of the Mayor as to the construction or application of this Constitution or as to any proceedings of the Council shall not be challenged at any meeting of the Council. Such interpretation will have regard to the purposes of this Constitution contained in Article 1.

16.3 Publication

- (a)

ARTICLE 17 – THE CIVIL CONTINGENCY CONSULTATION GROUP

17.1. The Council will establish a Civil Contingency Consultation Group.

17.2. **Aim**

To prepare a forum for consultation on issues related to emergency planning and business continuity within the Borough of Great Yarmouth.

17.3. **Objectives**

- To inform and update on preparedness and response measures for local emergencies and unplanned disruptions.
- To clarify and review hazards and threats to the normal functioning of services.
- To review procedures following a major incident and make recommendations as necessary.

17.4. **Schedule of Meetings**

It is suggested that meetings be scheduled twice a year with additional meetings as events require.

17.5. **Membership**

GYBC Elected Members:
Chairs of relevant committees

GYBC officers:

- Director of Customer Services
- Chief Executive
- Emergency Planning Manager.

Emergency Services representatives:

- Great Yarmouth Police
- GY Fire and Rescue Service: Emergency Planning Officer and GY Station Manager
- East of England Ambulance Service
- MCA Havenbridge House.

NCC Emergency Planning representative.

Representative of the Great Yarmouth Chamber Council of the Norfolk Chamber of Commerce.

ARTICLE 18 – THE GORLESTON AREA COMMITTEE

18.1. The Council will establish a Gorleston Area Committee.

18.2. **Aim**

To provide for better and more co-ordinated local services by enabling local Elected Members, residents and their communities to get involved in the work of the Council and other services.

18.3. **Objectives**

- To provide a clear and effective mechanism for community involvement in Council structures.
- To support the Council to respond to the requirements of the Localism Bill and to deliver the Big Society Agenda.
- To support the Council to better co-ordinate their delivery and to ensure that services are accountable, relevant and accessible to local people.
- To make recommendations to the Council with regard to Gorleston issues.

18.4. **Schedule of Meetings**

Meetings to be scheduled four times a year with additional meetings as required.

18.5. **Membership**

Chair

Permanent Members

- Permanent representation should be Local Elected Members from Magdalen, Claydon, Gorleston and St Andrews Wards.

Co-opted Members

- The Committee should co-opt Council Officers, County Councillors and representatives of local community organisations as appropriate to serve the needs of the Committee.

ARTICLE 19 – THE YARMOUTH AREA COMMITTEE

19.1. The Council will establish a Yarmouth Area Committee.

19.2. **Aim**

To provide for better and more co-ordinated local services by enabling local Elected Members, residents and their communities to get involved in the work of the Council and other services.

19.3. **Objectives**

- To provide a clear and effective mechanism for community involvement in Council structures.
- To support the Council to respond to the requirements of the Localism Act and to deliver the Big Society Agenda.
- To support the Council to better co-ordinate their delivery and to ensure that services are accountable, relevant and accessible to local people.
- To make recommendations to the Council with regard to Yarmouth issues.

19.4. **Schedule of Meetings**

It is suggested that meetings be scheduled twice a year with additional meetings as events require.

19.5. **Membership**

Chair

Permanent Members

- Permanent representation should be Local Elected Members from Central and Northgate, Nelson, Southtown and Cobholm, and North Yarmouth Wards.

Co-opted Members

- The Committee should co-opt Council Officers, County Councillors and representatives of local community organisations as appropriate to serve the

needs of the Committee.

PART 3

RESPONSIBILITY FOR FUNCTIONS

RESPONSIBILITY FOR FUNCTIONS

- 1.
2. **Responsibility for Council Functions**

(These are functions which only the Council can deal with. It may, however, delegate the decision making to a Committee or Officer).

Regulatory Council Functions

2.1 Development Control

The Development Control Committee shall perform all the planning and highway functions appropriate to Great Yarmouth Borough Council set out in the Local Authorities' (Functions and Responsibilities) (England) Regulations 2000, as amended.

2.2 Delegation to Officers

The Director of Customer Services and anyone who has written authority from him to act can discharge any function allocated to the Development Control Committee except:

- (a) where the proposal is for the residential development of a site of one hectare or more unless the proposal involves the development of 25 or less dwelling units and/or
- (b) where the proposal requires the submission of an environmental statement and/or
- (c) where the proposal involves the winning or working of minerals or relates to waste disposal and/or
- (d) where the Director of Customer Services declines to exercise his/her delegated authority and/or

2.3 Licensing Functions

The Licensing Committee shall perform the licensing and safety functions appropriate to Great Yarmouth Borough Council set out in the Local Authorities' (Functions and Responsibilities) (England) Regulations 2000, as amended.

- 2.4 Delegation arrangements for the Council's responsibilities under the Licensing Act 2003 and the Gambling Act 2005 are set out below.

Licensing Act 2003

MATTER TO BE DEALT WITH	FULL COMMITTEE	SUB-COMMITTEE	OFFICERS
Application for personal licence		If a police objection made	If no objection made
Application for personal licence, with unspent convictions		All cases	
Application for premises licence/club premises Certificate		If a relevant representation made	If no relevant representation made
Application for provisional statement		If a relevant representation Made	If no relevant representation made
Application to vary premises licence/club registration Certificate		If a relevant representation made	If no relevant representation made
Application to vary designated premises supervisor		If a police representation	All other cases
Request to be removed as designated premises supervisor			All cases
Application for transfer of premises licence		If a police representation	All other cases
Application for Interim Authorities		If a police representation	All other cases
Application to review premises licence/club premises Registration		All cases	
Decision on whether an objection or complaint is irrelevant, frivolous, vexatious, etc			All cases, initially with discretion to refer to Sub-committee
Decision to object when local authority is a consultee and not the lead authority		All cases	
Determination of a police representation to a temporary event notices		All cases	
Application of special policy relating to cumulative impact	All cases		

Gambling Act 2005

MATTER TO BE DEALT WITH	FULL COUNCIL	LICENSING COMMITTEE/ SUB-COMMITTEE	OFFICERS
Three year licensing policy	X		
Policy to permit casino	X		
Fee Setting - when appropriate			X (with Committee approval)
Application for a premises licence – new casino, if applicable	X	X (first stage)	
Application for premises licences		Where representations have been received and not withdrawn	Where no representations received/ representations have been withdrawn
Application for a variation to a licence		Where representations have been received and not withdrawn	Where no representations received/ representations have been withdrawn
Application for a transfer of a licence		Where representations have been received from the Commission	Where no representations received from the Commission
Application for a provisional statement		Where representations have been received and not withdrawn	Where no representations received/ representations have been withdrawn
Review of a premises licence		X	
Application for club gaming /club machine permits		Where representations have been received and not withdrawn	Where no representations received/ representations have been withdrawn
Cancellation of club gaming/ club machine permits		X	
Applications for other permits			X

Cancellation of licensed premises gaming machine permits			X
MATTER TO BE DEALT WITH	FULL COUNCIL	LICENSING COMMITTEE/ SUB-COMMITTEE	OFFICERS
Consideration of temporary use notice			X
Decision to give a counter notice to a temporary use notice		X	

2.5 Delegation to Officers

2.5.1 The Director of Customer Services and anyone who has written authority from him/her to act can discharge any function allocated to the Licensing Committee in relation to matters within his/her terms of appointment or which fall within his/her Service Performance Plan or within the service and responsibilities which are from time to time allocated to him/her except:

(a) where he/she is minded to:

- refuse to grant a licence or;
- revoke a licence or;
- refuse to renew a licence and/or

(b) where there is an objection which cannot be resolved to his proposal to grant or renew a licence and/or

(c) where the Director of Customer Services declines to exercise his/her delegated authority.

2.6 Duties and requirements of the Regulatory Committees (ie Development Control and Licensing)

2.6.1 Membership

The Council will decide annually the number of Members to be allocated to a Regulatory Committee

2.6.2

2.6.3 Appointments to Regulatory Committees will comply with the general law in relation to political balance and the proportionality rules.

2.7 Quorum

The quorum of each Committee shall be one third (if necessary rounded up to the nearest whole number) of the number of Members appointed to the Committee.

2.8 Rules of Debate

The Chair (or other person presiding at the meeting) shall determine (on the advice of Officers, if necessary) procedure and rules of debate at the meeting provided that in doing so he takes into account the Council Procedure Rules as appropriate.

2.9 Regulatory Committees acting as Tribunals

Where the Regulatory Committee, or an Officer, is acting as a tribunal, or in a quasi judicial manner, or is determining/considering the civil rights or obligations or the criminal responsibility of any person, then a proper procedure which accords with the requirements of natural justice and the right to a fair trial contained in Article 6 of the European Convention on Human Rights will be followed.

2.10 Access to Information

The Access to Information Rules apply to Regulatory Committees save as varied by the provisions of the Licensing Act 2003 and the Gambling Act 2005.

Other Council functions are delegated to the Committees or Officers set out below:

Committee	Membership	Functions	Delegation of Functions
-----------	------------	-----------	-------------------------

Committee	Membership	Functions	Delegation of Functions
Standards Committee	5 Members of the authority (and two non-voting members of a Parish Council wholly or mainly in the council area)	<p>The promotion and maintenance of high standards of conduct within the Council</p> <p>To advise the Council on the adoption or revision of its Code of Conduct</p> <p>To monitor and advise the Council about the operation of its Code of Conduct in the light of best practice, changes in the law, guidance from the Standards Board and recommendations of case tribunals under Section 80 of the Local Government Act 2000</p> <p>Assistance to Members of the authority</p> <p>To ensure that all Members of the Council have access to training in all aspects of the Members' Code of Conduct, that this training is actively promoted and that Members are aware of the standards expected from local Councillors under the Code</p> <p>Other Functions</p> <p>Functions relating to standard of conduct of Members under any relevant provision of, or regulations made</p>	

Committee	Membership	Functions	Delegation of Functions
		<p>under, the Local Government Act 2000</p> <p>Overview of complaints handling and Ombudsman investigations</p> <p>Oversight of the Constitution</p> <p>Power to make payments or provide other benefits in cases of maladministration</p>	
Appeals Committee	5 Members of the authority	<p>To consider appeals against disciplinary decisions from employees of the authority in accordance with the provisions of the Council's disciplinary procedure</p> <p>To consider appeals against decision to dismiss which are not of a disciplinary nature but which have been made for other reasons (eg long term ill-health)</p> <p>To consider unresolved grievances from employees under the Council's grievance procedure</p> <p>To deal with grading appeals from employees in accordance with the Council's agreed procedure for regrading applications</p>	

Committee	Membership	Functions	Delegation of Functions
Housing Appeals	3 Members of the authority or such other number as may be determined from time to time by Council	To consider appeals on housing management decisions other than decisions on Eviction and Nuisance Orders	
Council	Full Council	Functions relating to Elections Functions relating to elections as set out in Schedule 1 to the Local Authorities (Functions and Responsibilities) (England) Regulations 2000, as amended (“the Function Regulations”)	Delegated to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
Council	Full Council	Functions relating to name and status of areas and individuals The functions as set out in Schedule 1 to the Functions Regulations	
Council	Full Council	Power to make, amend, revoke or re-enact byelaws	
Council	Full Council	Power to promote or oppose local or personal Bills	
Council	Full Council	Functions relating to pensions etc The functions relating to pensions as set out in Schedule 1 of the Functions Regulations	Delegated to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth with power to act
Council	Full Council	Approval of the authority’s statement of accounts, income and expenditure and balance sheet or record of payments and receipts (as the case may be)	

Committee	Membership	Functions	Delegation of Functions
Council	Full Council	Power to make Standing Orders	
Council	Full Council	Power to make Standing Orders as to contracts	
Council	Full Council	Power to appoint staff	Delegated to Head of Paid Service save where member involvement is required by law
Council	Full Council	Power to determine the terms and conditions on which staff hold office (including procedures for their dismissal)	Delegated to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth provided UNISON are in agreement with the proposals and there is no material cost to the Council
Council	Full Council	Duty to make arrangements for proper administration of financial affairs	Delegated to Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
Council	Full Council	Power to appoint Officers for particular purposes (appointment of "proper Officers")	See Article 12.8 for general appointments
Council	Full Council	Power to make closing orders with respect to take-away food shops	Delegated to Director of Customer Services
Council	Full Council	Duty to designate Officer as the Head of the authority's Paid Service, and to provide staff, etc	
Council	Full Council	Duty to designate Officer as the Monitoring Officer and to provide staff	
Council	Full Council	Power to make payments or provide other benefits in case of maladministration	

3.

APPENDIX A

A. Services and Responsibilities of Directors

The current services and responsibilities of Directors are those as set out below:-

Service	Responsible to	Responsible to
Chief Executive - Corporate Strategy,	Council	Council
Housing and Neighbourhoods	Director of Housing and Neighbourhoods	Chief Executive

- Neighbourhood Management
 - Area Committees
 - Leisure and Culture
 - Play Strategy
 - Partnerships
 - Community Safety
 - Employment and Skills
 - Tenant Involvement
- Group Manager: Neighbourhood and Communities
- Director of Housing and Neighbourhoods
-
- Tenancy Services / Estate Management
 - Housing Options and Strategy
 - Empty Homes
- Group Manager: Housing Customers
- Director of Housing and Neighbourhoods
-
- Housing Finance
 - Rents
 - Business Planning
 - Maintenance and Improvement / Housing Capital Programme
- Group Manager: Housing Assets
- Director of Housing and Neighbourhoods
-
- Older Peoples Services and Supporting People
 - Adaptations
 - DFGs and HIA Homes for Health
- Group Manager: Housing Health and Wellbeing
- Director of Housing and Neighbourhoods

**Resources ,
Governance and
Growth**

Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

Chief Executive

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Finance - Payroll - HR - Audit (Client) - Revenues 	Group Manager: Resources	Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Strategic Planning - Economic Development - Enterprise GY 	Group Manager: Growth	Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Markets - Property Services - Conservation - Construction Services 	Group Manager; Property and Construction	Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Member Services - Scrutiny - Secretariat - Mayoralty - Policy and Performance - Elections - Some Licensing - Legal (Client) - FOI / Data Protection 	Group Manager: Governance	Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

Customer Services

Director of Customer Services

Chief Executive

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Development Control - Building Control - Coastal Protection - Land Charges 	Group Manager: Planning	Director of Customer Services
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Some Licensing - Food Hygiene - Noise Nuisance - ASB - Environmental Policy - Emergency Planning - Health and Safety - Seafront Management - Depot Services(Client) - Enviro-community Engagement 	Group Manager: Environmental Services	Director of Customer Services
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Benefits - Customer Services - Crematorium - Cashiers - Car Park - ICT (Client) 	Group Manager: Customer Services	Director of Customer Services
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Tourism GYTA - Marketing and Events - Reprographics - Press - Town Centre Partnership - Facilities Management 	Group manager: Tourism and Marketing	Director of Customer Services
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Depot Services 	Direct Report	Director of Customer Services

In addition to the services and responsibilities specified in Service Plans, the following functions have been specifically allocated, as follows:

Chief Officer	Function
Chief Executive	Authorisation of Approved Duties in urgent cases in consultation with Leader and Shadow Leader

Director of Housing and Neighbourhoods

All action under the Crime and Disorder Act, 1998

Director of Resources Governance and Growth

Power to act to make orders under Section 14A of the Public Order Act 1986. Miscellaneous grants from the Helping Hand Fund.

APPENDIX B

PART 4
RULES OF PROCEDURE

COUNCIL PROCEDURE RULES

1. ANNUAL MEETING OF THE COUNCIL

1.1 Timing and business

In a year when there is an ordinary election of Councillors, the annual meeting will take place within 21 days of the retirement of the outgoing Councillors. In any other year, the annual meeting will take place in May, on a date to be fixed by the Council

The annual meeting will:

- (i) elect a person to preside if the Mayor or Deputy Mayor is not present
- (ii) elect the Mayor
- (iii) elect the Deputy Mayor
- (iv) approve the minutes of the last meeting
- (v) receive any announcements from the Mayor and/or Head of Paid Service
- (vi) **elect the Leader and Deputy Leader**
- (vii)
- (viii) appoint a Scrutiny Committee, a Standards Committee and such other Committees as the Council considers appropriate
- (ix) agree the scheme of delegation (as set out in Part 3 of this Constitution)
- (x) approve a programme of ordinary meetings of the Council for the year and
- (xi) consider any business set out in the notice convening the meeting.

1.2 Appointment of Councillors to Committees and Outside Bodies

At the annual meeting, the Council meeting will:

- (i) decide which Committees to establish for the Municipal Year
- (ii) decide the size and Terms of Reference for those Committees
- (iii) decide the allocation of seats and substitutes to political groups in accordance with the political balance rules
- (iv) receive nominations of Councillors to serve on each Committee and outside body and
- (v) appoint to those Committees and outside bodies except where

appointment to those bodies has been delegated by the Council.

2. **ORDINARY MEETINGS**

Ordinary meetings of the Council will take place in accordance with a programme decided at the Council's annual meeting. Ordinary meetings will:

- (i) elect a person to preside if the Mayor and Deputy Mayor are not present
- (ii) approve the minutes of the last meeting
- (iii) receive any Declarations of Interest from Members
- (iv) receive any announcements from the Mayor, Leader, chairs of the Committees or the Head of Paid Service
- (v) receive questions from, and provide answers to, the public in relation to matters which in the opinion of the person presiding at the meeting are relevant to the business of the meeting
- (vi) deal with any business from the last Council meeting.
- (vii) receive reports from the Council's Committees and receive questions and answers on any of those reports
- (viii) receive reports about and receive questions and answers on the business of joint arrangements and external organisations
- (ix) consider motions and
- (x) consider any other business specified in the summons to the meeting including consideration of proposals from the Committees in relation to the Council's budget and policy framework and reports of the Scrutiny Committee for debate.

3. **EXTRAORDINARY MEETINGS**

3.1 **Calling extraordinary meetings**

Those listed below may request the **Director of Resources, Governance and Growth** to call Council meetings in addition to ordinary meetings:

- (i) the Council by resolution
- (ii) the Mayor
- (iii) the Monitoring Officer and
- (iv) any five Members of the Council if they have signed a requisition presented to the Mayor and he/she has refused to call a meeting or has failed to call a meeting within seven days of the presentation of the requisition.

3.2 **Business**

In the case of extraordinary meetings, however called, the **Director of Resources, Governance and Growth** shall set out the business to be considered and no business other than that set out in the summons shall be considered at the meeting.

4. **APPOINTMENT OF SUBSTITUTE MEMBERS OF COMMITTEES AND SUB-COMMITTEES**

4.1 **Allocation**

As well as allocating seats on Committees and Sub-Committees, the Council will allocate seats in the same manner for substitute Members.

4.2 **Number**

For each Committee or Sub-Committee, the Council will allow substitutes from each political group at the discretion of each group, provided that the substitute member has received the necessary training where appropriate.

4.3 **Powers and duties**

Substitute Members will have all the powers and duties of any ordinary Member of the Committee but will not be able to exercise any special powers or duties exercisable by the person they are substituting.

4.4 **Substitution**

Substitute Members may attend meetings in that capacity only:

- (i) to take the place of the ordinary Member for whom they are the designated substitute
- (ii) where the ordinary Member will be absent for the whole of the meeting and
- (iii) after notifying the **Director of Resources, Governance and Growth** by 9 am on the day of the meeting of the intended substitution.

5. **TIME AND PLACE OF MEETINGS**

The time and place of meetings will be determined by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth and notified in the summons.

6. **NOTICE OF AND SUMMONS TO MEETINGS**

The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth will give notice to the public of the time and place of any meeting in accordance with the Access to Information

Rules. At least five clear days before a meeting, the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth will send a summons by post, or email where appropriate, to every Member of the Council or leave it at their usual place of residence. The summons will give the date, time and place of each meeting and specify the business to be transacted, and will be accompanied by such reports as are available.

7. **CHAIR OF MEETING**

The person presiding at the meeting may exercise any power or duty of the Mayor. Where these rules apply to Committee and Sub-Committee meetings, references to the Mayor also include the Chairman of Committees and Sub-Committees.

8. **QUORUM**

The quorum of a meeting will be one third of the whole number of Members. During any meeting if the Mayor counts the number of Members present and declares there is not a quorum present, then the meeting will adjourn immediately. Remaining business will be considered at a time and date fixed by the Mayor. If he/she does not fix a date, the remaining business will be considered at the next ordinary meeting.

9. **QUESTIONS BY THE PUBLIC**

9.1 **General**

Members of the public may ask questions of chairs of the Committees at ordinary meetings of the Council during the period 7.00 pm to 7.30 pm.

9.2 **Order of questions**

Questions will be asked in the order in which they were received, except that the Mayor may group together similar questions.

9.3 **Notice of questions**

A question may only be asked if notice has been given by delivering it in writing or by electronic mail to the **Director of Resources, Governance and Growth** no later than midday seven days before the day of the meeting. Each question must give the name and address of the questioner and must name the Member of the Committee to whom it is to be put.

9.4 **Number of questions**

At any one meeting no person may submit more than one question and no more than one question may be asked on behalf of one organisation. The total number of questions to be dealt with at any ordinary meeting will be limited to five.

9.5 **Scope of questions**

The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth may reject a question if it:

- is not about a matter for which the local authority has a responsibility or which affects the Borough
- is defamatory, frivolous or offensive
- is substantially the same as a question which has been put at a meeting of the Council in the past six months or
- requires the disclosure of confidential or exempt information.

9.6 **Record of questions**

The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth will enter each question in a book open to public inspection and will immediately send a copy of the question to the Member to whom it is to be put. Rejected questions will include reasons for rejection.

Copies of all questions will be circulated to all Members and will be made available to the public attending the meeting.

9.7 **Asking the question at the meeting**

The Mayor will invite the questioner to put the question to the chair named in the notice. If a questioner who has submitted a written question is unable to be present, they may ask the Mayor to put the question on their behalf. The Mayor may ask the question on the questioner's behalf, indicate that a written reply will be given or decide, in the absence of the questioner, that the question will not be dealt with.

9.8 **Supplemental question**

A questioner who has put a question in person may also put one supplementary question without notice to the Member who has replied to his or her original question.

A supplementary question must arise directly out of the original question or the reply. The mayor may reject a supplementary question on any of the grounds in Rule 9.5 above.

9.9 **Written answers**

Any question which cannot be dealt with during public question time, either because of lack of time or because of the non-attendance of the Member, to whom it was to be put, will be dealt with by a written answer.

9.10 **Reference of question to a Committee**

Unless the Mayor decides otherwise, no discussion will take place on any question,

but any Member may move that a matter raised by a question be referred to a Committee. Once seconded, such a motion will be voted on without discussion.

10. **QUESTIONS BY MEMBERS**

10.1 **On reports of a Committee**

A Member of the Council may ask the Chairman of a Committee any question without notice upon an item of the report of the Committee when that item is being received or under consideration by the Council.

10.2 **Questions on notice at full Council**

Subject to Rule 11.4, a Member of the Council may ask:

§ the Mayor

§

§ the Chairman of any Committee or Sub-Committee

a question on any matter in relation to which the Council has powers or duties or which affects the Borough of Great Yarmouth.

10.3 **Questions on notice at Committees and Sub-Committees**

Subject to Rule 11.4, a Member of a Committee or Sub-Committee may ask the Chairman of it a question on any matter in relation to which the Council has powers or duties or which affect the Borough of Great Yarmouth and which falls within the terms of reference of that Committee or Sub-Committee.

10.4 **Notice of questions**

A Member may only ask a question under Rule 10.2 or 10.3 if either:

- (a) they have given at least ten working days notice in writing of the question to the **Director of Resources, Governance and Growth** or
- (b) the question relates to urgent matters, they have the consent of the Mayor to whom the question is to be put and the content of the question is given to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth by 11am on the day of the meeting.

(The person to whom the question is directed may waive these requirements)

10.5 **Response**

An answer may take the form of:

- (a) a direct oral answer
- (b) where the desired information is in a publication of the Council or other published work, a reference to that publication or
- (c) where the reply cannot conveniently be given orally, a written answer circulated later to the questioner with the minutes of the meeting

at which the question has been asked.

10.6 **Supplementary question**

A Member asking a question under Rule 10.2 or 10.3 may ask one supplementary question without notice of the Member to whom the first question was asked. The supplemental question must arise directly out of the original question or the reply. Unless the Mayor decides otherwise, no discussion will take place on any question but any member may move that the matter raised by a question be referred to the committee or appropriate officer or sub-committee. Once seconded, such a motion will be voted on without discussion.

11. **MOTIONS ON NOTICE**

11.1 **Notice**

Except for motions which can be moved without notice under Rule 12, written notice of every motion, signed by at least five Members, must be delivered to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth not later than ten days before the date of the meeting. These will be entered in a book open to public inspection.

11.2 **Motion set out in Agenda**

Motions for which notice has been given will be listed on the agenda in the order in which notice was received, unless the Member giving notice states, in writing, that they propose to move it to a later meeting or withdraw it.

11.3 If a motion, notice of which is set out in the summons, is not moved it shall, unless postponed by consent of the Council be treated as abandoned and shall not be moved without fresh notice.

11.4 Motions for which notice has been given shall be dealt with at the first available Council meeting.

11.5 **Scope**

Motions must be about matters for which the Council has a responsibility or which affect the Borough of Great Yarmouth.

12. **MOTIONS WITHOUT NOTICE**

The following motions may be moved without notice:

- (a) to appoint a Chairman of the meeting at which the motion is moved
- (b) in relation to the accuracy of the minutes
- (c) to change the order of business in the agenda
- (d) to refer something to an appropriate body or individual

- (e) to appoint a Committee or Member arising from an item on the summons for the meeting
- (f) to receive reports or adoption of recommendations of Committees or Officers and any resolutions following from them
- (g) to withdraw a motion
- (h) to amend a motion (complex variations to be made in writing and a copy given to the Mayor and Director of Resources, Governance and Growth prior to the meeting)
- (i) to proceed to the next business
- (j) that the question be now put
- (k) to adjourn a debate
- (l) to adjourn a meeting
- (m) to suspend a particular Council procedure rule
- (n) to exclude the public and press in accordance with the Access to Information Rules
- (o) to not hear further a Member named under Rule 20.3 or to exclude them from the meeting under Rule 20.4 and
- (p) to give the consent of the Council where its consent is required by this Constitution.

13. RULES OF DEBATE

13.1 No speeches until motion seconded

No speeches may be made after the mover has moved a proposal and explained the purpose of it until the motion has been seconded.

13.2 Right to require motion in writing

Unless notice of the motion has already been given, the Mayor may require it to be written down and handed to him/her before it is discussed.

13.3 Secunder's speech

When seconding a motion or amendment, a Member may reserve their speech until later in the debate.

13.4 Content and length of speeches

Speeches must be directed to the question under discussion or to a personal explanation or point of order. No speech may exceed five minutes without the consent of the Council.

13.5 **When a Member may speak again**

A Member who has spoken on a motion may not speak again whilst it is the subject of debate, except:

- (a) to speak once on an amendment moved by another Member
- (b) to move a further amendment if the motion has been amended since he/she last spoke
- (c) if his/her first speech was on an amendment moved by another Member, to speak on the main issue (whether or not the amendment on which he/she spoke was carried)
- (d) in exercise of a right of reply
- (e) on a point or order and
- (f) by way of personal explanation.

13.6 **Amendments to motions**

- (a) An amendment to a motion must be relevant to the motion and will either be:
 - (i) to refer the matter to an appropriate body or individual for consideration or reconsideration
 - (ii) to leave out words
 - (iii) to leave out words and insert or add others and
 - (iv) to insert or add wordsas long as the effect of (ii) to (iv) is not to negate the motion to have the effect of introducing a new subject matter into the motion before Council.
- (b) Only one amendment may be moved and discussed at any one time. No further amendment may be moved until the amendment under discussion has been disposed of.
- (c) If an amendment is not carried, other amendments to the original motion may be moved.
- (d) If an amendment is carried, the motion as amended takes the place of the original motion. This becomes the substantive motion to which any further amendments are moved.

- (e) After an amendment has been carried, the Mayor will read out the amended motion before accepting any further amendments, or if there are none, put it to the vote.

13.7 **Alteration of motion**

- (a) A Member may alter a motion of which he/she has given notice with the consent of the meeting. The meeting's consent will be signified without discussion.
- (b) A Member may alter a motion which he/she has moved without notice with the consent of both the meeting and the seconder. The meeting's consent will be signified without discussion.
- (c) Only alterations which could be made as an amendment may be made.

13.8 **Withdrawal of motion**

A Member may withdraw a motion which he/she has moved with the consent of both the meeting and the seconder. The meeting's consent will be signified without discussion. No Member may speak on the motion after the mover has asked permission to withdraw it unless permission is refused.

13.9 **Right of reply**

- (a) The mover of a motion has a right to reply at the end of the debate on the motion, immediately before it is put to the vote.
- (b) If an amendment is moved, the mover of the original motion has the right of reply at the close of the debate on the amendment, but may not otherwise speak on it.
- (c) The mover of the amendment has no right of reply to the debate on his or her amendment.

13.10 **Motions which may be moved during debate**

When a motion is under debate, no other motion may be moved except the following procedural motions:

- (a) to withdraw a motion
- (b) to amend a motion
- (c) to proceed to the next business
- (d) that the question be now put
- (e) to adjourn a debate
- (f) to adjourn a meeting

- (g) to exclude the public and press in accordance with the Access to Information Rules and
- (h) to not hear further a Member named under Rule 20.3 or to exclude them from the meeting under Rule 20.4.

13.11 Closure motions

- (a) A Member may move, without comment, the following motions at the end of a speech of another Member:
 - (i) to proceed to the next business
 - (ii) that the question be now put
 - (iii) to adjourn a debate or
 - (iv) to adjourn a meeting.
- (b) If a motion to proceed to next business is seconded and the Mayor thinks the item has been sufficiently discussed, he or she will give the mover of the original motion a right of reply and then put the procedural motion to the vote.
- (c) If a motion that the question be now put is seconded and the Mayor thinks the item has been sufficiently discussed, he/she will put the procedural motion to the vote. If it is passed he/she will give the mover of the original motion a right of reply before putting his/her motion to the vote.
- (d) If a motion to adjourn the debate or to adjourn the meeting is seconded and the Chairman thinks the item has not been sufficiently discussed and cannot reasonably be so discussed on that occasion, he/she will put the procedural motion to the vote without giving the mover of the original motion the right of reply.

13.12 Point of order

A Member may raise a point of order at any time. The Mayor will hear them immediately. A point of order may only relate to an alleged breach of these Council Rules of Procedure or the law. The Member must indicate the rule or law and the way in which he/she considers it has been broken. The ruling of the Mayor on the matter will be final.

13.13 Personal explanation

A Member may make a personal explanation at any time. A personal explanation may only relate to some material part of an earlier speech by the Member which may appear to have been misunderstood in the present debate. The ruling of the Mayor on the admissibility of a personal explanation will be final.

14.

15. **PREVIOUS DECISIONS AND MOTIONS**

15.1 **Motion to rescind a previous decision**

A motion of amendment to rescind a decision made at a meeting of Council within the past six months cannot be moved unless the notice of motion is signed by at least 16 Members.

15.2 **Motion similar to one previously rejected**

A motion or amendment in similar terms to one that has been rejected at a meeting of Council in the past six months cannot be moved unless the notice of motion or amendment is signed by at least 24 Members. Once the motion or amendment is dealt with, no one can propose a similar motion or amendment for six months.

16. **VOTING**

16.1 **Majority**

Unless this Constitution provides otherwise, any matter will be decided by a simple majority of those Members voting and present in the room at the time the question was put.

16.2 **Chairman's casting vote**

If there are equal numbers of votes for and against, the Mayor will have a second or casting vote. There will be no restriction on how the Mayor chooses to exercise a casting vote.

16.3 **Voting Method**

The Mayor will take the vote by show of hands, electronic means, or if there is no dissent, by the affirmation of the meeting.

16.4 **Recorded vote**

If 16 Members present at the meeting demand it, the names for and against the motion or amendment or abstaining from voting will be taken down in writing and entered into the minute.

16.5 **Right to require individual vote to be recorded**

Where any Member requests it immediately after the vote is taken, their vote will be so recorded in the minutes to show whether they voted for or against the motion or abstained from voting.

16.6 **Voting on appointments**

If there are more than two people nominated for any position to be filled and there is not a clear majority of votes in favour of one person, then the name of the person with the least number of votes will be taken off the list and a new vote taken. The process will continue until there is a majority of votes for one person.

17. MINUTES

17.1 Signing the minutes

The Mayor will sign the minutes of the proceedings at the next suitable meeting. The Mayor will move that the minutes of the previous meeting be signed as a correct record. The only part of the minutes that can be discussed is their accuracy.

17.2 No requirement to sign minutes of previous meeting at extraordinary meeting

Where in relation to any meeting, the next meeting for the purpose of signing the minutes is a meeting called under paragraph 3 of schedule 12 to the Local Government Act 1972 (an Extraordinary Meeting), then the next following meeting (being a meeting called otherwise than under that paragraph) will be treated as a suitable meeting for the purposes of paragraph 41(1) and (2) of schedule 12 relating to signing of minutes.

17.3 Form of minutes

Minutes will contain all motions and amendments in the exact form and order the Mayor put them.

18. RECORD OF ATTENDANCE

19. EXCLUSION OF PUBLIC

Members of the public and press may only be excluded either in accordance with the Access to Information Rules in Part 4 of this Constitution or Rule 21 (Disturbance by Public).

20. MEMBERS' CONDUCT

20.1 Standing to speak

When a Member speaks at full Council they must stand and address the meeting through the Mayor. If more than one Member stands, the Mayor will ask one to speak and the others must sit. Other Members must remain seated whilst a Member is speaking unless they wish to make a point or order or a point of personal explanation.

20.2 Chairman standing

When the Mayor stands during a debate, any Member speaking at the time must stop and sit down. The meeting must be silent.

20.3 Member not to be heard further

If a Member persistently disregards the ruling of the Mayor by behaving improperly or offensively or deliberately obstructs business, the Mayor may move that the Member be not heard further. If seconded, the motion will be voted on without discussion.

20.4 Member to leave the meeting

If the Member continues to behave improperly after such a motion is carried, the Mayor may move that either the Member leave the meeting or that the meeting is adjourned for a specified period. If seconded, the motion will be voted on without discussion.

20.5 General disturbance

If there is a general disturbance making orderly business impossible, the Mayor may adjourn the meeting for as long as he/she thinks necessary.

21. DISTURBANCE BY PUBLIC

21.1 Removal of member of the public

If a member of the public interrupts proceedings, the Mayor will warn the person concerned. If they continue to interrupt, the Mayor will order their removal from the meeting room.

21.2 Clearance of part of meeting room

If there is a general disturbance in any part of the meeting room open to the public, the Mayor may call for that part to be cleared.

22. AUTHENTICATION OF DOCUMENTS

Where any document is necessary to any legal procedure or proceedings on behalf of the Council, it will be signed by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth or other person authorised by him/her, unless any enactment otherwise authorises or requires, or the Council has given requisite authority to some other person.

23. COMMON SEAL OF THE COUNCIL

The Common Seal of the Council will be kept in a safe place in the custody of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth. The Common Seal will be affixed to those documents which, in the opinion of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, should be sealed. The affixing of the Common Seal will be attested by the Chief Executive or some other person authorised by him/her.

24. SUSPENSION AND AMENDMENT OF COUNCIL PROCEDURE RULES

24.1 Suspension

All of these Council Rules of Procedure may be suspended by motion on notice or without notice if at least one half of the whole number of Members of the Council are present. Suspension can only be for the duration of the meeting.

24.2 Amendment

Any motion to add to, vary or revoke these Council Rules of Procedure will, when proposed and seconded, stand adjourned without discussion to the next ordinary meeting of the Council.

25. APPLICATION TO COMMITTEES AND SUB-COMMITTEES

All of the Council Rules of Procedures apply to meetings of full Council. The rules apply to meetings of Committees and Sub-Committees so far as they are appropriate.

ACCESS TO INFORMATION PROCEDURE RULES

References:

*Sections 100A - H and schedule 12A Local Government Act 1972
Section 22 of The Local Government Act 2000
Chapter 7, DETR Guidance*

1. SCOPE

These rules apply to all meetings of the Council and its committees,

2. ADDITIONAL RIGHTS TO INFORMATION

These rules do not affect any more specific rights to information contained elsewhere in this Constitution or the law.

3. RIGHTS TO ATTEND MEETINGS

Members of the public may attend all meetings subject only to the exceptions in these rules.

4. NOTICES OF MEETING

The Council will give at least five clear days notice of any meeting by posting details of the meeting at the Town Hall, Hall Quay, Great Yarmouth.

5. ACCESS TO AGENDA AND REPORTS BEFORE THE MEETING

The Council will make copies of the agenda and reports open to the public available for inspection at the designated office at least five clear days before the meeting. If an item is added to the agenda later, the revised agenda (where reports are prepared after the summons has been sent out, the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth shall make each such report available to the public as soon as the report is completed and sent to Councillors) will be open to inspection for the time the item was added to the agenda.

6. SUPPLY OF COPIES

The Council will supply copies of:

- (a) any agenda and reports which are open to public inspection
- (b) any further statements or particulars necessary to indicate the nature of the items in the agenda and

- (c) if the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth thinks fit, copies of any other documents supplied to Councillors in connection with an item to any person on payment of a charge for postage and any other costs.

7. ACCESS TO MINUTES ETC AFTER THE MEETING

The Council will make available copies of the following for six years after a meeting:

- (a) the minutes of the meetings or records of decisions taken, together with reasons, for all meetings of the Committees, excluding any part of the minutes of proceedings when the meeting was not open to the public or which disclose exempt or confidential information
- (b) a summary of any proceedings not open to the public where the minutes open to inspection would not provide a reasonably fair and coherent record
- (c) the agenda for the meeting and
- (d) reports relating to items when the meeting was open to the public.

8. BACKGROUND PAPERS

8.1 List of background papers

The Reporting Officer will set out in every report a list of those documents (called background papers) relating to the subject matter of the report which in his/her opinion:

- (a) disclose any facts or matters on which the report or an important part of the report is based and
- (b) which have been relied on to a material extent in preparing the report

but does not include published works or those which disclose exempt or confidential information (as defined in Rule 10) and in respect of Committee reports, the advice of a political adviser.

8.2 Public inspection of background papers

The Council will make available for public inspection for four years after the date of the meeting one copy of each of the documents on the list of background papers.

9. SUMMARY OF PUBLIC RIGHTS

A written summary of the public's rights to attend meetings and to inspect and copy documents must be kept at and available to the public at the Town Hall, Hall Quay, Great Yarmouth.

10. EXCLUSION OF ACCESS BY THE PUBLIC TO MEETINGS

10.1 Confidential information - requirement to exclude public

The public must be excluded from meetings whenever it is likely in view of the nature of the business to be transacted or the nature of the proceedings that confidential information would be disclosed.

10.2 Exempt information - discretion to exclude public

The public may be excluded from meetings whenever it is likely in view of the nature of the business to be transacted or the nature of the proceedings that exempt information would be disclosed.

Where the meeting will determine any person's civil rights or obligations, or adversely affect their possessions, Article 6 of the Human Rights Act 1998 establishes a presumption that the meeting will be held in public unless a private hearing is necessary for one of the reasons specified in Article 6.

10.3 Meaning of confidential information

Confidential information means information given to the Council by a Government Department on terms which forbid its public disclosure or information which cannot be publicly disclosed by Court Order.

10.4 Meaning of exempt information

Exempt information means information falling within the following seven categories:

1. Information relating to any individual.
2. Information which is likely to reveal the identity of an individual.
3. Information relating to the financial or business affairs of any particular person (including the authority holding that information).
4. Information relating to any consultations or negotiations, or contemplated consultations or negotiations, in connection with any labour relations matter arising between the authority or a Minister of the Crown and employees of, or office holders under, the authority.
5. Information in respect of which a claim to legal professional privilege could be maintained in legal proceedings.
6. Information which reveals that the authority proposes –
 - (a) to give under any enactment a notice under or by virtue of

which requirements are imposed upon a person; or

(b) to make an order or direction under any enactment.

7. Information relating to any action taken or to be taken in connection with the prevention, investigation or prosecution of crime.

Information falling within paragraph 3 above is not exempt information by virtue of that paragraph if it is required to be registered under –

- (a) the Companies Act 1985;
- (b) the Friendly Societies Act 1974;
- (c) the Friendly Societies Act 1992;
- (d) the Industrial and Provident Societies Acts 1965 to 1978;
- (e) the Building Societies Act 1986; or
- (f) the Charities Act 1993.

Information is not exempt information if it relates to proposed development for which the local planning authority may grant itself planning permission pursuant to regulation 3 of the Town and Country Planning General Regulations 1992.

Information which –

- (a) falls within any of paragraphs 1 to 7 above; and
- (b) is not prevented from being exempt by virtue of paragraph 8 or 9 above,

is exempt information if and so long, as in all the circumstances of the case, the public interest in maintaining the exemption outweighs the public interest in disclosing the information.

11. **EXCLUSION OF ACCESS BY THE PUBLIC TO REPORTS**

If the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth thinks fit, the Council may exclude access by the public to reports which in his or her opinion relate to items during which, in accordance with Rule 10, the meeting is likely not to be open to the public. Such reports will be marked "Not for publication", together with the category of information likely to be disclosed.

12.

13. **SPECIAL URGENCY**

If by virtue of the date by which a decision must be taken then the decision can only be taken if the decision taker (if an individual) or the Chairman of the body making the decision, obtains the agreement of the Chairman of the Scrutiny Committee that the taking of the decision cannot be reasonably deferred. If there is no Chairman of the Scrutiny Committee, or if the Chairman of the Scrutiny Committee is unable to act, then the agreement of the Mayor or in his/her absence the Deputy Mayor will suffice.

14. **REPORT TO COUNCIL**

14.1

14.2

15.

16.

18.

19.

20. **SCRUTINY COMMITTEE ACCESS TO DOCUMENTS**

20.1

20.2 **Limit on rights**

The Scrutiny Committee will not be entitled to:

(a) any document that is in draft form

(b) any part of a document that contains exempt or confidential information, unless that information is relevant to an action or decision they are reviewing or scrutinising or intend to scrutinise or

(c) the advice of a political adviser.

21. **ADDITIONAL RIGHTS OF ACCESS FOR MEMBERS**

21.1

21.3 **Nature of rights**

These rights of a Member are additional to any other right he/she may have.

22 **Rights of Access to Meetings and Documents by Councillors**

- 22.1 A Councillor possesses certain rights conferred by law e.g. s/he is entitled to attend Council, or Committee and Sub-Committee meetings without hindrance; and, if s/he can show a "need to know" in relation to a particular item of business,.
- 22.2 A Member may attend any meeting but, unless appointed to the Committee, Sub-committee, Group or Forum or as a substitute Member, shall not vote and save as provided in (3) below, may only speak with the permission of the Chairman.
- 22.3 A Member who is the subject of a Code of Conduct complaint may only attend the Standards Committee meeting when the complaint is being considered if either the Monitoring Officer or the Committee agrees.
- 22.4
- 22.5 The rights of Councillors to documents emanate from statute and common law - by far the most important being a Councillor's common law rights.
- 22.6 Case law on the subject highlights two themes which are often in conflict, namely, the corporate responsibilities and duties of Members of the Council to the Council as a whole and the duties and responsibilities of Councillors as representatives of a wider range of community interest which they are elected to represent.

Common Law Rights

- 22.6 In principle, a Member has a right to inspect documents addressed to the Council upon the basis that a Member is under a duty to keep him/herself informed of Council business which relates to their role as an elected representative and which they have a "need to know". Accordingly, if the motive for seeing a document is indirect, improper or ulterior then access can be quite properly barred. So too, a Member does not have a "roving commission" through Council paperwork. In practice this means that if a Councillor is a Member of a Committee then s/he has the right to inspect documents relating to the business of that Committee, if not a Member of that Committee then the Councillor must show cause why the sight of them is necessary to perform his/her duties.
- 22.7 The entitlement of a Committee Member to have access to relevant documents at the particular Committee is stronger than that of a non-Member but as indicated it is not an absolute right and improper/indirect/ulterior motives would be a bar to access.
- 22.8 A Member of a Committee is normally entitled to see documents relating to the work of a Sub-Committee of that Committee or if the Councillor is a Member of another Committee the administration of which relates to the activities of the relevant Sub-Committee.

22.9.1 Where there is a right of access, that right would seem to override the duties of confidentiality owed to third parties only so far as is necessary to give effect to that right. The information should still be dealt with on a confidential basis.

Statute

- 22.10 Section 100(f) of the Local Government Act 1972 (As amended) provides additional statutory rights for Members in respect of documents in the possession or under the control of the Council which contains material relevant to business to be transacted at a Council Committee or Sub-Committee meeting. If the particular Member could not establish a "need to know" at common law then the Proper Officer of the Council would be entitled to withhold access if the documents fell within the categories of exempt information within paragraphs 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 7 of Schedule 12A to the Act.
- 22.11 Procedure Rules provide that requests for information should normally be made to the Proper Officer of the Council although it is not unusual for Members to approach the relevant Officer direct - only having recourse to the Proper Officer or the Chief Executive if there is a need to clarify the particular rights of access in relation to the material concerned.

FINANCIAL AND CONTRACT PROCEDURE RULES

(CONTRACT STANDING ORDERS AND FINANCIAL REGULATIONS)

The Council's Standing Orders relating to contracts and the Financial Regulations are those adopted by the Council from time to time and will be incorporated into this document.

Financial Regulations and Financial Procedures

The Council's Financial Regulations, incorporating the Council's Financial Procedures are contained within this document.

The Council's Financial Regulations and Financial Procedures are those adopted by the Council from time to time and will be incorporated into this document.

When reading these Financial Regulations and Financial Procedures reference should also be made to the Constitution – Part 3 – Responsibility for Functions p 3/10 and the Council's Standing Orders relating to contracts for the supply of works, goods or services.

Financial Regulations and Financial Procedures

Financial Regulations

Appendix A – Financial Procedures

Financial Regulations and Financial Procedures:

Version 1.0 – Approved by Council – May 2002

Version 2.0 – Approved by Council – 26 July 2006

V 2.0 - Author: Mark Kemp - Group Accountant (Monitoring) on behalf of the Head of Financial Services – May 2006

FINANCIAL REGULATIONS

General principles

- (i) Financial regulations provide the framework for managing the authority's financial affairs. They apply to every member and employee of the authority and anyone acting on its behalf.
- (ii) The regulations identify the financial responsibilities of the full council, Committee, Scrutiny Committee, Audit and Risk Committee, Members, the Head of Paid Service, the Monitoring Officer, the section 151 officer, the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth and other Directors. Committee Members and Directors should maintain a written record where decision making has been delegated to members of their staff, including seconded staff. Where decisions have been delegated to other responsible officers, references to the Directors in the regulations should be read as referring to them.
- (iii) All employees and members have a general responsibility for taking reasonable action to provide for the security of the assets under their control, and for ensuring that the use of these resources is legal, is properly authorised, provides value for money and achieves best value.
- (iv) The section 151 officer is responsible for maintaining a continuous review of the financial regulations and submitting any additions or changes necessary to the full council for approval. The section 151 officer is also responsible for reporting, where appropriate, breaches of the financial regulations to the Council and / or to Committee.
- (v) Directors are responsible for ensuring that all employees in their departments are aware of the existence and content of the authority's financial regulations and other internal regulatory documents and that they comply with them. They must also ensure that an adequate number of copies are available for reference within their Service.
- (vi) The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is responsible for issuing advice and guidance (financial procedures) to underpin the financial regulations that members, staff and others acting on behalf of the authority are required to follow. Financial procedures are used to implement the requirements of the Council's financial regulations.
- (vii) Appendix A contains the Council's financial procedures. These are used to interpret and ensure adherence to the Council's financial regulations.
- (viii) Executive Management Team is comprised of the Head of Paid Service and Directors as identified in the constitution. Executive Management Team has no direct financial responsibility as all budgets are delegated to Directors

once approved by Council. Members of Executive Management Team may, however, act as, or on behalf of a Director in accordance with these financial regulations in the absence of any Director, or on any other matter relating to the effective operation of the Council's business.

- (ix) Breaches of these financial regulations shall be investigated in accordance with the procedures laid down in the local disciplinary procedures.

A FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

Introduction

- A.1 Financial management covers all financial accountabilities in relation to the running of the authority, including the policy framework and budget.

The Council

- A.2 The full council is responsible for adopting the authority's constitution and Members' Code of Conduct and for approving the policy framework and budget within which Committee operates. The policy framework is set out in its constitution. The Council is also responsible for establishing arrangements for monitoring compliance with the agreed policy and related Committee decisions.

- A.3 The Council is responsible for approving procedures for recording and reporting decisions taken. This includes those key decisions delegated by, and decisions taken by, the Council and its Committees. These delegations and details of who has responsibility for which decisions are set out in the constitution.

Committee

- A.4 Committee is responsible for proposing the policy framework and budget to the Council, and for discharging Committee functions in accordance with the policy framework and budget.

- A.5 Committee decisions can be delegated to a committee of Committee, a single relevant responsible Committee Member or an Officer.

- A.6 Committee is responsible for establishing protocols to ensure that individual Committee Members consult with relevant officers before taking a decision within his or her delegated authority. In doing so, the individual member must take account of legal and financial liabilities and risk management issues that may arise from the decision.

Scrutiny Committee

A.7 The Scrutiny Committee is responsible for scrutinising Committee decisions before or after they have been implemented and for holding the Committee to account. The Scrutiny Committee are also responsible for making recommendations on future policy options and for reviewing the general policy and service delivery of the authority.

Audit and Risk Committee

A.8 The Audit and Risk Committee is established by the full Council and is responsible, amongst other things, for audit matters and may make recommendations to Committee or in exceptional circumstances when considering any audit reports directly concerning the actions of Committee, reporting directly to the full council. It has right of access to all the information it considers necessary and can consult directly with internal and external auditors. The Committee is responsible for reviewing the external auditor's reports, the annual audit letter, internal audit reports and action plans, and internal audit's annual report.

Standards Committee

A.9 The Standards Committee is established by the full Council and is responsible for promoting and maintaining high standards of conduct amongst Councillors. In particular, it is responsible for advising the Council on the adoption and revision of the Members' code of conduct, and for monitoring the operation of the code.

Other Regulatory Committees

A.10 Planning and Licensing are not Committee functions but are exercised through the Development Control and Licensing Committees under powers delegated by the full Council. The Development Control and Licensing Committees report to the Council.

The Statutory Officers

Head of Paid Service

A.11 The Head of Paid Service is responsible for the corporate and overall strategic management of the authority. He / she must report to and provide information for Committee, the full Council, the Scrutiny Committee and other Committees. He / she is responsible for establishing a framework for management direction, style and standards and for monitoring the performance of the organisation. The Head of Paid Service is also responsible, together with the Monitoring Officer, for the system of record keeping in relation to all the full council's decisions (see below).

Monitoring Officer

A.12 The Monitoring Officer is responsible for promoting and maintaining high standards of financial conduct and therefore provides support to the standards committee. The Monitoring Officer is also responsible for reporting any actual or potential breaches of the law or maladministration to the full Council and / or to Committee, and for ensuring that procedures for

recording and reporting key decisions are operating effectively.

A.13 The Monitoring Officer must ensure that Committee decisions and the reasons for them are made public. He or she must also ensure that Council Members are aware of decisions made by Committee and of those made by officers who have delegated Committee responsibility.

A.14 The Monitoring Officer is responsible for advising all Councillors and Officers about who has authority to take a particular decision.

A.15 The Monitoring Officer is responsible for advising Committee or full council about whether a decision is likely to be considered contrary or not wholly in accordance with the policy framework.

A.16 The Monitoring Officer (together with the Section 151 Officer) is responsible for advising Committee or full Council about whether a decision is likely to be considered contrary to or not wholly in accordance with the budget. Actions that may be 'contrary to the budget' may include:

- initiating a new policy
- committing expenditure in future years to above the budget
- incurring inter service transfers above virement limits

A.17 The Monitoring Officer is responsible for maintaining an up-to-date constitution.

Section 151 Officer

A.18 The Section 151 Officer has statutory duties in relation to the financial administration and stewardship of the authority. This statutory responsibility cannot be overridden. The statutory duties arise from:

- Section 151 of the Local Government Act 1972
- The Local Government Finance Act 1988
- The Local Government and Housing Act 1989
- The Accounts and Audit Regulations 2003.

A.19 Section 114 of the Local Government Finance Act 1988 requires the "responsible financial officer" to report to full Council, Committee and external auditor if the authority or one of its officers:

- has made, or is about to make, a decision which involves incurring unlawful expenditure
- has taken, or is about to take, an unlawful action which has resulted or would result in a loss or deficiency to the authority

- is about to make an unlawful entry in the authority's accounts.

Section 114 of the 1988 Act also requires:

- the responsible financial officer to nominate a properly qualified member of staff to deputise should he or she be unable to perform the duties under section 114 personally
- the authority to provide the responsible financial officer with sufficient staff, accommodation and other resources – including legal advice where this is necessary – to carry out the duties under section 114.

Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

A.20 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is responsible for:

- the proper administration of the authority's financial affairs
- setting and monitoring compliance with financial management standards
- advising on the corporate financial position and on the key financial controls necessary to secure sound financial management
- providing financial information
- preparing the revenue budget and capital programme
- insurance and VAT matters
- treasury management.

Directors

A.21 Directors (or a member of the Executive Management Team acting on their behalf) are responsible for:

- ensuring that Committee members are advised of the financial implications of all proposals and that the financial implications have been agreed by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
- signing contracts on behalf of the authority (other than those under the Council's seal).

A.22 It is the responsibility of Directors to consult with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth and seek approval on any matter liable to affect the authority's finances materially, before any commitments are incurred.

Other financial accountabilities

Virement

A.23 The full council is responsible for agreeing procedures for virement of expenditure between budget headings.

A.24 Directors are responsible for seeking the approval of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth for in-year virements within delegated limits.

A.25 Committee is responsible for agreeing procedures for carrying forward under- and overspendings on budget headings.

Accounting policies

A.26 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is responsible for selecting accounting policies and ensuring that they are applied consistently.

Accounting records and returns

A.27 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is responsible for determining the accounting procedures and records for the authority.

The annual statement of accounts

A.28 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is responsible for ensuring that the annual statement of accounts is prepared in accordance with the *Code of Practice on Local Authority Accounting in the United Kingdom: A Statement of Recommended Practice (the SORP)* (CIPFA/LASAAC). Council is responsible for approving the annual statement of accounts.

B FINANCIAL PLANNING

Introduction

B.1 The full Council is responsible for agreeing the authority's policy framework and budget, which will be proposed by Committee. In terms of financial planning, the key elements are:

- the corporate plan
- the budget
- the capital programme.

Policy framework

B.2 The full Council is responsible for approving the policy framework and

budget. The policy framework comprises the following statutory plans and strategies, as amended from time to time by legislation, including;

- corporate plan
- capital programme
- treasury management policy statement
- crime and disorder reduction strategy
- food enforcement service plan.

B.3 The full Council is also responsible for approving procedures for agreeing variations to approved budgets, plans and strategies forming the policy framework and for determining the circumstances in which a decision will be deemed to be contrary to the budget or policy framework. Decisions should be referred to the full Council by the Monitoring Officer.

B.4 The full Council is responsible for setting the level at which Committee may re-allocate budget funds from one service to another. Committee is responsible for taking in-year decisions on resources and priorities in order to deliver the budget policy framework within the financial limits set by the council.

Preparation of the Corporate Plan

B.5 The Head of Paid Service is responsible for proposing the Corporate Plan to Committee for consideration before its submission to the full Council for approval.

Budgeting

Budget format

B.6 The general format of the budget will be approved by the full Council and proposed by the Committee on the advice of the Section 151 Officer. The draft budget should include allocation to different services and projects, proposed taxation levels and contingency funds.

B.7 The Section 151 Officer is responsible for ensuring that a revenue budget is prepared on an annual basis and medium term revenue forecast plan on a three-yearly rolling basis for consideration by Committee, before submission to the full council. The full Council may amend the budget or ask Committee to reconsider it before approving it.

B.8 Committee is responsible for issuing guidance on the general content of the budget in consultation with the Section 151 Officer as soon as possible following approval by the full Council.

B.9 It is the primary responsibility of Directors to ensure that budget estimates

reflecting agreed service plans are submitted to Committee and that these estimates are prepared in line with guidance issued by Committee.

Budget monitoring and control

B.10 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is responsible for providing appropriate financial information to enable budgets to be monitored effectively. He or she must monitor and control expenditure against budget allocations and report to Committee, Scrutiny Committee and the Audit and Risk Committee on the overall position on a regular basis.

B.11 It is the responsibility of Directors to control income and expenditure within their area and to monitor performance taking account of financial information provided by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

Resource allocation

B.12 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is responsible for developing and maintaining a resource allocation process that ensures due consideration of the full council's policy framework.

Preparation of the capital programme

B.13 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is responsible for ensuring that a three-year capital programme is prepared on an annual basis for consideration by Committee before submission to full Council.

Guidelines

B.14 Guidelines on budget preparation are issued to members and Directors by Committee following agreement with the Section 151 Officer. The guidelines will take account of:

- legal requirements
- medium term planning prospects
- the corporate plan
- available resources
- spending pressures
- best value and other government guidelines
- other internal policy documents
- cross-cutting issues (where relevant).

Maintenance of reserves

B.15 It is the responsibility of the Section 151 Officer to advise Committee and / or the full Council on prudent levels of reserves for the authority.

C RISK MANAGEMENT AND CONTROL OF RESOURCES

Introduction

C.1 It is essential that robust, integrated systems are developed and maintained for identifying and evaluating all significant operational risks to the authority. This should include the proactive participation of all those associated with planning and delivering services.

Risk Management

C.2 Committee is responsible for approving the authorities risk management strategy and for reviewing the effectiveness of risk management. Committee is responsible for ensuring that proper insurance exists, where

appropriate.

C.3 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is responsible for preparing the authority's risk management strategy and for promoting it throughout the authority.

C.4 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is responsible for advising Committee on all matters in relation to the taking out of proper insurance cover, where appropriate.

Internal control

C.5 Internal control refers to the systems of control devised by management to help ensure the authority's objectives are achieved in a manner that promotes economical, efficient and effective use of resources and that the authority's assets and interests are safeguarded.

C.6 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is responsible for advising on effective systems of internal control. These arrangements need to ensure compliance with all applicable statutes and regulations, and other relevant statements of best practice. They should ensure that public funds are properly safeguarded and used economically, efficiently and in accordance with the statutory and other authorities that govern their use.

C.7 It is the responsibility of Directors to establish sound arrangements for planning, appraising, authorising and controlling their operations in order to achieve continuous improvement, economy, efficiency and effectiveness and for achieving their financial performance targets.

Audit requirements

C.8 The Accounts and Audit Regulations 2003, and subsequent amendments, require every local authority to maintain an adequate and effective internal audit.

C.9 The Audit Commission is responsible for appointing external auditors to each local authority. The basic duties of the external auditor are governed by section 15 of the Local Government Finance Act 1982, as amended by section 5 of the Audit Commission Act 1998.

C.10 The authority may, from time to time, be subject to audit, inspection or investigation by external bodies such as HM Revenue and Customs, who have statutory rights of access.

Preventing fraud and corruption

C.11 The Section 151 Officer is responsible for the development and

maintenance of an anti-fraud and corruption policy.

Assets

C.12 Directors should ensure that records and assets are properly maintained (by appropriately qualified persons) and securely held. They should also ensure that contingency plans for the security of assets and continuity of service in the event of disaster or system failure, are in place. Assets should be acquired and disposed of in accordance with the Council's Asset Management Plan, and includes seeking alternative uses by / within the Council before disposal.

Treasury Management

C.13 The authority has adopted CIPFA's Treasury Management in Local Authorities - Code of Practice.

C.14 The full council is responsible for approving the treasury management policy statement setting out the matters detailed in paragraph 15 of CIPFA's Treasury Management in Local Authorities - Code of Practice. The policy statement is proposed to the full council by Committee. The Section 151 Officer has delegated responsibility for implementing and monitoring the statement.

C.15 All money held by the authority is controlled by the officer designated for the purposes of Section 151 of the Local Government Act 1972.

C.16 The Section 151 Officer is responsible for reporting to Committee a proposed treasury management strategy for the coming year at or before the start of each financial year.

C.17 All Committee decisions on borrowing, investment or financing shall be delegated to the Section 151 Officer, who is required to act in accordance with CIPFA's Treasury Management in Local Authorities - Code of Practice.

C.18 The section 151 officer is responsible for reporting to Committee not less than once in each financial year on treasury management activities undertaken during the course of the year and the exercise of delegated treasury management powers. One such report shall comprise an annual report on treasury management for presentation by 31 July of the succeeding financial year.

Staffing

C.19 The full Council is responsible for determining how officer support for executive and non-executive roles within the authority will be organised.

C.20 The Head of Paid Service is responsible for providing overall management

to staff. He or she is also responsible for ensuring that there is proper use of the evaluation or other agreed systems for determining the remuneration of a job.

C.21 Directors are responsible for controlling total staff numbers by:

- advising Committee on the budget necessary in any given year to cover estimated staffing levels
- adjusting the staffing to a level that can be funded within approved budget provision, varying the provision as necessary within that constraint in order to meet changing operational needs
- the proper use of appointment procedures.

D SYSTEMS AND PROCEDURES

Introduction

D.1 Sound systems and procedures are essential to an effective framework of accountability and control.

General

D.2 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is responsible for the operation of the authority's accounting systems, the form of accounts and the supporting financial records. Any changes made by Directors to the existing financial systems or the establishment of new systems must be approved by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth. However, Directors are responsible for the proper operation of financial processes in their own departments.

D.3 Any changes to agreed procedures by Directors to meet their own specific service needs should be firstly agreed with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

D.4 Directors should ensure that their staff receive relevant financial training, and should arrange for this to be provided by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

D.5 Directors must ensure that, where appropriate, computer and other systems are registered in accordance with data protection legislation. Directors must ensure that staff are aware of their responsibilities under freedom of information legislation.

Income and expenditure

D.6 It is the responsibility of Directors to ensure a proper scheme of delegation has been established within their specific area and is operating efficiently. The scheme of delegation should identify staff authorised to act on the Director behalf or on behalf of Committee, in respect of payments, income collection and placing orders, together with the limits of their authority. Committee is responsible for approving procedures for writing off debts as part of the overall control framework of accountability and control.

Payments to employees and members

D.7 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is responsible for all payments of salaries to all staff, including payments for overtime, and for payment of all allowances to members and for all matters in relation to statutory payroll taxation.

Taxation

D.8 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is responsible for advising Directors, in light of guidance issued by appropriate bodies and relevant legislation as it applies, on all taxation issues that affect the authority, with the exception of those matters detailed in D.7 above.

D.9 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is responsible for maintaining the authority's tax records, making all tax payments, receiving tax credits and submitting tax returns, (with the exception of those matters detailed in D.7 above) by their due date, as appropriate.

E EXTERNAL ARRANGEMENTS

Introduction

E.1 The council provides a distinctive leadership role for the community and brings together the contributions of the various stakeholders. It must also act to achieve the promotion and improvement of the economic, social or environmental well-being of its area.

Partnerships

E.2 Committee is responsible for approving delegations, including frameworks for partnerships. Committee is the focus for forming partnerships with other local public, private, voluntary and community sector organisations to address local needs.

E.3 Committee can delegate functions – including those relating to partnerships – to officers. These are set out in the scheme of delegation that forms part of the authority's constitution. Where functions are delegated, Committee remains accountable for them to the full council.

E.4 The Head of Paid Service (or his nominated representative) represents the authority on partnership and external bodies.

E.5 The Monitoring Officer is responsible for promoting and maintaining the same high standards of conduct with regard to financial administration in partnerships that apply throughout the authority.

E.6 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth must ensure that the accounting arrangements to be adopted relating to partnerships and joint ventures are satisfactory. He or she must also consider the overall corporate governance arrangements and legal issues when arranging contracts with external bodies. He or she must ensure that the risks have been fully appraised before agreements are entered into with external

bodies.

E.7 Directors are responsible for ensuring that appropriate approvals are obtained before any negotiations are concluded in relation to work with external bodies.

External funding

E.8 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is responsible for ensuring that all funding notified by external bodies is received and properly recorded in the authority's accounts. The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth must be informed of all external funding applied for by spending departments prior to such bids being submitted to the funding body.

Work for third parties

E.9 Committee is responsible for approving the contractual arrangements for any work for third parties or external bodies.

Appendix A: Financial Procedures

1.0 FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT STANDARDS

FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

Why is this important?

1.01 All Members and employees have a duty to abide by the highest standards of probity in dealing with financial issues. This is facilitated by ensuring everyone is clear about the standards to which they are working and the controls that are in place to ensure that these standards are met.

Key controls

1.02 The key controls and control objectives for financial management standards are:

- (a) their promotion throughout the authority
- (b) a monitoring system to review compliance with financial standards, and regular comparisons of performance indicators and benchmark standards that are reported to Committee and full Council.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

1.03 To ensure the proper administration of the financial affairs of the authority.

1.04 To set the financial management standards and to monitor compliance with them.

1.05 To ensure proper professional practices are adhered to and to act as head of profession in relation to the standards, performance and development of financial staff.

1.06 To advise on the key strategic controls necessary to secure sound financial management.

1.07 To ensure that financial information is available to enable accurate and timely monitoring and reporting of comparisons of national and local financial performance indicators.

Responsibilities of Directors

1.08 To promote the financial management standards set by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth in their Service and to monitor adherence to the standards and practices, liaising as necessary with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

1.09 To promote sound financial practices in relation to the standards, performance and development of staff in their departments.

Managing expenditure

SCHEME OF VIREMENT

Why is this important?

1.10 The scheme of virement is intended to enable the Committee, Directors and their staff to manage budgets with a degree of flexibility within the overall policy framework determined by the full Council, and therefore to optimise the use of resources.

Key controls

1.11 Key controls for the scheme of virement are:

- (a) it is administered by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth within guidelines set by these regulations. Any variation from this scheme requires the approval of the full Council.
- (b) the overall budget is agreed by the Committee and approved by the full Council. Directors and budget managers are therefore authorised to incur expenditure in accordance with the estimates that make up the budget. The rules below cover virement; that is, switching resources between approved estimates or heads of expenditure. For the purposes of this scheme, a budget head is considered to be a detailed budget head within the same or different Chartered Institute of Public Finance and Accountancy (CIPFA) standard classification heading of a service plan budget.
- (c) virement does not create additional overall budget liability. Directors are expected to exercise their discretion in managing their budgets responsibly and prudently. For example, they should avoid supporting recurring expenditure from one-off sources of savings or additional income, or creating future commitments, including full-year effects of decisions made part way through a year, for which they have not identified future resources. Directors must plan to fund such commitments from within their own budgets.
- (d) virements are not permitted between General Fund and Housing Revenue Account services and are also not permitted from staffing budgets to any other budget head except with the express approval of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

1.12 To prepare jointly with the Directors a report to the single relevant responsible Committee Member where virements in excess of £25,000 are proposed or to Committee if these are in excess of £50,000 and / or would result in objectives and / or targets set out in the relevant Service Plan not being fully achieved, in accordance with the conditions in paragraphs 1.14 to 1.19 below.

Responsibilities of Directors

1.13 Directors may, subject to the written approval of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, exercise virement on budgets under his or her control for amounts up to £25,000 on any one budget head during the year, subject to the conditions in paragraphs 1.14 to 1.19 below.

1.14 Amounts greater than £25,000 require the approval of the single relevant responsible Committee Member, following a joint report by the Director(s) and Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, which must specify the proposed expenditure and the source of funding, and must explain the implications in the current and future financial years.

The approval of Committee is required when the proposed virement is more than £50,000 and would result in objectives and/or targets stated in the relevant Service Plan not being fully achieved.

Amounts greater than £100,000 require the approval of the full Council.

1.15 The prior approval of the Committee is required for any virement, of whatever amount, where it is proposed to:

- vire between budgets of different single relevant responsible Committee Members
- vire between budgets managed by different Directors
- incur expenditure which would result in objectives and/or targets stated in the relevant service plan not being achieved.

1.16 Virement that is likely to impact on the level of service activity of another Director should be implemented only after agreement with the relevant Director

1.17 No virement relating to a specific financial year shall be made after 31 March in that year for expenditure yet to be incurred.

1.18 Virement from employee budgets will not be permitted except for the employment of external contractors employed to carry out duties normally undertaken by employees.

1.19 Where an approved budget is a lump-sum or contingency intended for allocation during the year, its allocation will not be treated as a virement, provided that the amount is used in accordance with the purposes for which it has been established.

TREATMENT OF YEAR-END BALANCES

Why is this important?

1.20 The rules below cover arrangements for the transfer of resources between accounting years, i.e. a carry-forward. For the purposes of this scheme, a budget heading is considered to be a detailed budget head within the same or different Chartered Institute of Public Finance and Accountancy (CIPFA) standard classification heading of a service plan budget.

Key controls

1.21 Appropriate accounting procedures are in operation to ensure that carried-forward totals are correct.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

1.22 To administer the scheme of carry-forward within the guidelines approved by the full council.

1.23 To report under-spending on service budgets carried forward to Committee. In addition, where the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth considers it appropriate, over / under-spending in any financial year not previously considered by the Committee may be reported to the Scrutiny Committee for its consideration.

Responsibilities of Directors

1.24 Under-spending on budgets under the control of a Directors may be carried forward, subject to:

(a) the approval of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth who shall determine annually the carry-forward procedures for each financial year and subject to a decision not to permit carry-forwards, these provisions shall not apply.

(b) the approval of the Committee Member with responsibility for resources where the under-spending exceeds £10,000 for any one revenue budget, as detailed in the financial management system.

(c) the under-spending being due to circumstances outside the control of the Directors, but on budget headings which are directly under his or her control and influence and are not merely fortuitous.

(d) the overall service budget not being overspent.

Subject to (a) and (b) above, under-spending on special items approved by the Council during the budget process may be carried forward without further restrictions as may budgets which are to be financed totally from external sources.

ACCOUNTING POLICIES

Why is this important?

1.25 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is responsible for the preparation of the authority's annual statement of accounts, in accordance with proper practices as set out in the format required by the *Code of Practice on Local Authority Accounting in the United Kingdom: A Statement of Recommended Practice (the SORP)* (CIPFA/LASAAC), for each financial year ending 31 March.

Key controls

1.26 The key controls for accounting policies are:

- (a) systems of internal control are in place that ensures that financial transactions are lawful.
- (b) suitable accounting policies are selected and applied consistently
- (c) proper accounting records are maintained
- (d) financial statements are prepared which present fairly the financial position of the authority and its expenditure and income.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

1.27 To select suitable accounting policies and to ensure that they are applied consistently. The accounting policies are set out in the annual statement of accounts, which is prepared at 31 March each year, and covers such items as:

- (a) separate accounts for capital and revenue transactions
- (b) the basis on which debtors and creditors at year end are included in the accounts
- (c) details on substantial provisions and reserves
- (d) fixed assets
- (e) depreciation

- (f) capital charges
- (g) work in progress
- (h) stocks and stores
- (i) deferred charges
- (j) accounting for value added tax
- (k) government grants
- (l) leasing
- (m) pensions

Responsibilities of Directors

1.28 To adhere to the accounting policies and guidelines approved by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

ACCOUNTING RECORDS AND RETURNS

Why is this important?

1.29 Maintaining proper accounting records is one of the ways in which the authority discharges its responsibility for stewardship of public resources. The authority has a statutory responsibility to prepare its annual accounts to present fairly its operations during the year. These are subject to external audit. This audit provides assurance that the accounts are prepared properly, that proper accounting practices have been followed and that quality arrangements have been made for securing economy, efficiency and effectiveness in the use of the authority's resources.

Key controls

- 1.30 The key controls for accounting records and returns are:
- (a) all Committee Members, finance staff and budget managers operate within the required accounting standards and timetables
 - (b) all the authority's transactions, material commitments and contracts and other essential accounting information are recorded completely, accurately and on a timely basis
 - (c) procedures are in place to enable accounting records to be reconstituted in the event of systems failure
 - (d) reconciliation procedures are carried out to ensure transactions are correctly recorded
 - (e) documents are retained in a format (either original or electronic e.g. scanned) to ensure that they are properly available in accordance with potential legislative, legal admissibility and other requirements.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

1.31 To determine the accounting procedures and records for the authority. Where these are maintained outside the finance department, the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth must be consulted by the Head(s) of Service concerned.

1.32 To arrange for the compilation of all accounts and accounting records under his or her direction.

1.33 To comply with the following principles when allocating accounting duties:

(a) separating the duties of providing information about sums due to or from the authority and calculating, checking and recording these sums from the duty of collecting or disbursing them

(b) employees with the duty of examining or checking the accounts of cash transactions must not themselves be engaged in these transactions.

1.34 To make proper arrangements for the audit of the authority's accounts in accordance with the Accounts and Audit Regulations 2003 and subsequent amendments.

1.35 To ensure that all claims for funds including grants are made by the due date.

1.36 To prepare and publish the audited accounts of the authority for each financial year, in accordance with the statutory timetable and to ensure that Council approves the annual statement of accounts in accordance with the requirements of the relevant Accounts and Audit Regulations.

1.37 To administer the authority's arrangements for virements and over / under spendings to be carried forward to the following financial year.

1.38 To ensure the proper retention of financial documents in accordance with the requirements set out in the authority's document retention schedules.

Responsibilities of Directors

1.39 To consult and obtain the approval of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth before making any changes to accounting records and procedures.

1.40 To comply with the principles outlined in paragraph 1.33 when allocating accounting duties.

1.41 To maintain adequate records to provide a management trail leading from

the source of income / expenditure through to the accounting statements.

1.42 To supply information required promptly to enable the annual statement of accounts to be completed in accordance with guidelines issued by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

THE ANNUAL STATEMENT OF ACCOUNTS

Why is this important?

1.43 The authority has a statutory responsibility to prepare its own accounts to present fairly its operations during the year. Council is responsible for approving the statutory annual statement of accounts.

Key controls

1.44 The key controls for the annual statement of accounts are:

- the authority is required to make arrangements for the proper administration of its financial affairs and to secure that one of its officers has the responsibility for the administration of these affairs. In this authority, that officer is the Section 151 Officer.
- the authority's annual statement of accounts must be prepared in accordance with proper practices as set out in the *Code of Practice on Local Authority Accounting in the United Kingdom: A Statement of Recommended Practice (the SORP)* (CIPFA/LASAAC).

Responsibilities of Section 151 Officer

1.45 To sign and date the annual statement of accounts, stating that it presents fairly the financial position of the authority at the accounting date and its income and expenditure for the year ended 31 March.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

1.46 To select suitable accounting policies and to apply them consistently.

1.47 To make estimates that are reasonable and prudent.

1.48 To comply with the *Code of Practice on Local Authority Accounting in the United Kingdom: A Statement of Recommended Practice (the SORP)* (CIPFA/LASAAC).

1.49 To draw up the timetable for final accounts preparation and to advise staff and external auditors accordingly.

Responsibilities of Directors

1.50 To comply with accounting guidance provided by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth and to supply the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth with information consistent with the manner and timescale requested.

2.0 FINANCIAL PLANNING

PERFORMANCE PLANS

Why is this important?

2.01 Each local authority has a statutory responsibility to publish various performance plans, including crime reduction strategies, asset management plan, recycling plan, housing strategy, housing business plan etc. The purpose of performance plans is to explain overall priorities and objectives, current performance, and proposals for further improvement.

Key controls

2.02 The key controls for performance plans are:

- (a) to ensure that all relevant plans are produced and that they are consistent.
- (b) to produce plans in accordance with statutory requirements.
- (c) to meet the timetables set.
- (d) to ensure that all performance information is accurate, complete and up to date.
- (e) to provide improvement targets which are meaningful, realistic and challenging.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

2.03 To advise on and supply the financial information that needs to be included in performance plans in accordance with statutory requirements and agreed timetables.

Responsibilities of Chief Executive

2.04 To contribute to the development of corporate and service targets and objectives and performance information.

2.05 To ensure that systems are in place to measure activity and collect accurate information for use as performance indicators.

Responsibilities of Directors

2.06 To contribute to the development of performance plans in line with statutory requirements.

2.07 To contribute to the development of corporate and service targets and objectives and performance information.

2.08 To ensure that performance information is monitored sufficiently frequently to allow corrective action to be taken if targets are not likely to be met and that information is provided to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth promptly and accurately to ensure that reporting and auditing targets are complied with.

Budgeting

FORMAT OF THE BUDGET

Why is this important?

2.09 The format of the budget determines the level of detail to which financial control and management will be exercised. The format shapes how the rules around virement operate, the operation of cash limits and sets the level at which funds may be reallocated within budgets.

Key controls

2.10 The key controls for the budget format are:

- (a) the format complies with all legal requirements
- (b) the format complies with CIPFA's Best Value Accounting - Code of Practice (BVACOP)
- (c) the format reflects the accountabilities of service delivery.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

2.11 To advise Committee on the format of the budget that is to be approved by the full council.

Responsibilities of Directors

2.12 To comply with accounting guidance provided by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

REVENUE BUDGET PREPARATION, MONITORING AND CONTROL

Why is this important?

2.13 Council approval of a service plan and the revenue budget for any one financial year confers authority upon Directors to incur expenditure during that year on any item included therein, with the exception of any starred (*) items, which require the further and subsequent approval of Committee. Budget management ensures that once the budget has been approved by full council, resources allocated are used for their intended purposes and are properly accounted for. Budgetary control is a continuous process, enabling the authority to review and adjust its budget targets during the financial year. It also provides the mechanism that calls to account managers responsible for defined elements of the budget.

2.14 By continuously identifying and explaining variances against budgetary targets, the authority can identify changes in trends and resource requirements at the earliest opportunity. To ensure that the authority in total does not overspend, each service is required to manage its own expenditure within the cash-limited budget allocated to it.

2.15 For the purposes of budgetary control by managers, a budget will normally be the planned income and expenditure for a service or cost centre. However, budgetary control may take place at a more detailed level if this is required by the Director's scheme of delegation.

Key controls

2.16 The key controls for managing and controlling the revenue budget are:

- (a) budget managers (see 2.21) should be responsible only for income and expenditure that they can influence.
- (b) there is a nominated budget manager for each cost centre heading.
- (c) budget managers accept accountability for their budgets and the level of service to be delivered and understand their financial responsibilities.
- (d) budget managers follow an approved certification process for all expenditure.

(e) income and expenditure are properly recorded and accounted for.

(f) performance levels / levels of service are monitored in conjunction with the budget and necessary action is taken to align service outputs and budget.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

2.17 To establish an appropriate framework of budgetary management and control that ensures that:

(a) budget management is exercised within the approved annual cash budget limits unless the full council agrees otherwise

(b) each Director has available timely information on receipts and payments on each budget which is sufficiently detailed to enable managers to fulfil their budgetary responsibilities

(c) expenditure is committed only against an approved budget head

(d) all officers responsible for committing expenditure comply with relevant guidance, and the financial regulations

(e) each cost centre has a single named manager, determined by the relevant Director. As a general principle, budget responsibility should be aligned as closely as possible to the decision-making processes that commits expenditure.

2.18 To administer the authority's scheme of virement and carry forwards of under / overspendings.

2.19 To prepare and submit reports on the authority's projected income and expenditure compared with the budget on a regular basis.

Responsibilities of Directors

2.20 To maintain budgetary control within their Service, in adherence to the principles in 2.17, and to ensure that all income and expenditure is properly recorded and accounted for.

2.21 To ensure that an accountable budget manager is identified for each item of income and expenditure under the control of the Director. As a general principle, budget responsibility should be aligned as closely as possible to

the decision-making that commits expenditure.

2.22 To ensure that spending remains within the service's overall budget, and that individual budget heads are not overspent, by monitoring the budget and taking appropriate corrective action where significant variations from the approved budget are forecast.

2.23 Variances over and above the approved budget are to be investigated and reported to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

2.24 In each December to recommend fees and charges for the following financial year to Committee, together with an estimate of the amount to be included in the budget as a result of those fees and charges being implemented. This need not be done if fees and charges are raised in line with the amount recommended by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

2.25 To ensure that a monitoring process is in place to review performance levels / levels of service in conjunction with the budget and is operating effectively.

2.26 To submit reports to Committee and to the full Council, in consultation with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, where it appears that the amount of any item of approved revenue expenditure is likely to be exceeded or the amount of any item of approved income may not be reached.

2.27 Directors may use income received in addition to that anticipated in the revenue budget approved by the Council to finance additional expenditure after either:

(a) seeking the approval of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth if:

i) the additional income (sponsorship, grants or gifts) is given to the Council for a specific project or area of activity, and does not result in the Council incurring additional unbudgeted net cost or,

ii) the sum to be spent is £5,000 or less, or

(b) seeking the approval of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth and Committee.

2.28 To seek prior approval by the full council or Committee (as appropriate) for new proposals, of whatever amount, that:

- (a) create financial commitments in future years
- (b) change existing policies, initiate new policies or cease existing policies
- (c) materially extend or reduce the authority's services.

2.29 To ensure compliance with the scheme of virement.

2.30 To agree with the relevant Directors where it appears that a budget proposal, including a virement proposal, may impact materially on another service area or Director's level of service activity.

BUDGETS AND MEDIUM-TERM FINANCIAL PLANNING

Why is this important?

2.31 The authority is a complex organisation responsible for delivering a wide variety of services. It needs to plan effectively and to develop systems to enable scarce resources to be allocated in accordance with carefully weighed priorities. The budget is the financial expression of the authority's plans and policies.

2.32 The revenue budget must be constructed so as to ensure that resource allocation properly reflects the service plans and priorities of the full council. Budgets (spending plans) are needed so that the authority can plan, authorise, monitor and control the way money is allocated and spent. It is illegal for an authority to budget for a deficit.

2.33 Medium-term planning (or a three- to five-year planning system) involves a planning cycle in which managers develop their own plans. As each year passes, another future year will be added to the medium-term plan. This ensures that the authority is always preparing for events in advance.

Key controls

2.34 The key controls for budgets and medium-term planning are:

- (a) specific budget approval for all expenditure
- (b) budget managers are consulted in the preparation of the budgets for which they will be held responsible and accept accountability within delegations set by the Committee for their budgets and the level of service to be delivered
- (c) a monitoring process is in place to review regularly the effectiveness

and operation of budget preparation and to ensure that any corrective action is taken.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

- 2.35 To prepare and submit reports on budget prospects to both Executive Management Team and Committee, including resource constraints set by the Government. Reports should take account of medium-term prospects, where appropriate.
- 2.36 To determine the detailed form of revenue estimates and the methods for their preparation, consistent with the budget approved by the full Council, and after consultation with Committee and Directors.
- 2.37 To prepare and submit reports to Committee on the aggregate spending plans of departments and on the resources available to fund them, identifying, where appropriate, the implications for the level of council tax to be levied.
- 2.38 To advise on the medium-term implications of spending decisions.
- 2.39 To encourage the best use of resources and value for money by working with Directors to identify opportunities to improve economy, efficiency and effectiveness, and by encouraging good practice in conducting financial appraisals of development or savings options, and in developing financial aspects of service planning.
- 2.40 To advise the full council on Committee proposals in accordance with his or her responsibilities under Section 151 of the Local Government Act 1972.

Responsibilities of Directors

- 2.41 To prepare estimates of income and expenditure, in consultation with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, to be submitted to Committee.
- 2.42 To prepare budgets that are consistent with any relevant cash limits, with the authority's annual budget cycle and with guidelines issued by Committee. The format should be prescribed by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth in accordance with any general directions of the full council.
- 2.43 To integrate financial and budget plans into service planning, so that budget plans can be supported by financial and non-financial performance

measures.

2.44 In consultation with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth and in accordance with the laid-down guidance and timetable, to prepare detailed draft revenue budgets for consideration by the appropriate committee.

2.45 When drawing up draft budget requirements, to have regard to:

- (a) spending patterns and pressures revealed through the budget monitoring process
- (b) legal requirements
- (c) policy requirements as defined by the full council in the approved policy framework
- (d) initiatives already under way.

RESOURCE ALLOCATION

Why is this important?

2.46 A mismatch often exists between available resources and required resources. A common scenario is that available resources are not adequate to fulfil need / desire. It is therefore imperative that needs / desires are carefully prioritised and that resources are fairly allocated, in order to fulfil all legal responsibilities. Resources may include staff, money, equipment, goods and materials.

Key controls

2.47 The key controls for resource allocation are:

- (a) resources are acquired in accordance with the law and using an approved authorisation process
- (b) resources are used only for the purpose intended, to achieve the approved policies and objectives, and are properly accounted for
- (c) resources are securely held for use when required
- (d) resources are used with the minimum level of waste, inefficiency or loss for other reasons.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

2.48 To advise on methods available for the funding of resources, such as grants from central government, borrowing requirements and leasing.

2.49 To assist in the allocation of resources to budget managers.

Responsibilities of Directors

2.50 To work within budget limits and to utilise resources allocated, and further allocate resources, in the most efficient, effective and economic way.

2.51 To identify opportunities to minimise or eliminate resource requirements or consumption without having a detrimental effect on service delivery.

CAPITAL PROGRAMMES

Why is this important?

2.52 Capital expenditure involves acquiring or enhancing fixed assets with a long-term value to the authority, such as land, buildings, and major items of plant, equipment or vehicles. Capital assets shape the way services are delivered in the long term and create financial commitments for the future in the form of financing costs and revenue running costs.

2.53 The Government places strict controls on the financing capacity of the authority. This means that capital expenditure should form part of an investment strategy and should be carefully prioritised in order to maximise the benefit of scarce resources.

Key controls

2.54 The key controls for capital programmes are:

(a) specific approval by the full Council for the programme of capital expenditure. Approval by full Council of the capital budget and service plans shall confer authority upon Directors to incur capital expenditure during the year on any item included therein, with the exception of any starred (*) items, which require the further and subsequent approval of Committee, provided that the Council's funding allocation for that scheme is not exceeded.

(b) capital projects proposed for inclusion in the draft budget shall be formulated in accordance with the Council's Capital Strategy and

submitted for approval by the Committee.

- (c) proposals for improvements and alterations to buildings must be approved by the appropriate Directors,
- (d) the development and implementation of asset management plans.
- (e) accountability for each proposal is accepted by a named manager.
- (f) monitoring of progress in conjunction with expenditure and comparison with approved budget.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

- 2.55 To prepare capital estimates jointly with Directors and the Executive Board and to report them to Committee for approval. Committee will make recommendations on the capital budget and on any associated financing requirements to the full Council.
- 2.56 To obtain Committee approval where a Director proposes to bid for or exercise additional borrowing approval not anticipated in the capital programme. This is because the extra borrowing may create future commitments to financing costs.
- 2.57 To prepare and submit reports to Committee on the projected income, expenditure and resources compared with the approved estimates.
- 2.58 To issue guidance concerning capital schemes and controls, for example, on project appraisal techniques. The definition of 'capital' will be determined by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, having regard to government regulations and accounting requirements.

Responsibilities of Directors

- 2.59 To comply with guidance concerning capital schemes and controls issued by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.
- 2.60 To ensure that all capital proposals submitted for inclusion in the budget have undergone a project appraisal in accordance with the Council's Capital Strategy and any guidance issued by Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.
- 2.61 In consultation with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, to prepare and submit to Committee project appraisals for all schemes costing £250,000 or more before expenditure is committed, even though the scheme has been included in the capital budget and appropriate service plan.

A project appraisal shall include:

- i) the capital and revenue forecasts phased over the life of the development,
- ii) any available plans or drawings,
- iii) the amount of any estimates or tender,
- iv) any necessary approvals by government departments.

2.62 To prepare quarterly reports reviewing the capital programme provisions for their services which should include estimated final costs of schemes in the approved capital programme for submission to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

2.63 To ensure that adequate records are maintained for all capital contracts.

2.64 To proceed with projects only when there is adequate provision in the capital programme.

2.65 Notwithstanding the authority conferred by Regulation 2.54, (that is, the general authority to spend approved capital budgets) Committee may require a specific item to be spent only after further consultation with them. This budget will be known as a starred item, “*”.

2.66 To seek the approval of the relevant Committee Member where the Director proposes to make a grant, which has not been specifically identified in the course of constructing the agreed capital budget, with the exception of private sector renewal grants.

2.67 To expend sums in addition to the Council’s funding allocation, such as Capital Challenge or other contributions from partners to a scheme, on any scheme included in the approved budget only after seeking the approval of the relevant Committee Member and the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

2.68 To report to the relevant Committee Member for information where the effect of those additional sums mentioned in 2.66 is to alter the phasing of the capital programme. If the effect is to alter the phasing of the Council’s own financial input, the matter must be approved by Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

2.69 To obtain the approval of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth and seek the approval of the relevant Committee Member in cases where a scheme is to be financed wholly from Section 106 funds of up to £50,000 for previously agreed schemes and with the Committee in respect

of schemes which are in excess of this amount, contrary to policy or exceed the agreed spending limits.

2.70 To make each capital budget head held on the Council's Financial Management System the responsibility of a specified officer. This shall be notified to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth who shall allocate budgets, approved by Council, to those specified officers.

2.71 To make adequate arrangements for ensuring (as far as possible) that expenditure during any financial year on items within the capital budget or supplementary budget which are under their control do not exceed the amount approved.

2.72 To prepare and submit reports, jointly with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, to Committee, on any variation in project costs greater than the approved amount.

2.73 Capital expenditure for which there is no provision in the capital budget approved by the Council, shall not be incurred without the Council on the recommendation of Committee, approving a supplementary budget, except in an extreme emergency (in this case the Director concerned must report on the matter to the next meeting of the Scrutiny Committee).

2.74 Where a Director wishes to incur capital expenditure for which there is no provision or insufficient provision in the budget the Director may:

(a) within or between Service Plan(s), under their control, make with the written approval of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, virement(s) known as variations to the capital programme or,

(b) with the agreement of other Directors, make with the written approval of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth virement(s) known as variations to the capital programme between Service Plan capital budgets.

2.75 Notwithstanding the authority conferred by Regulation 2.74, a Director must first seek the approval of:

(a) the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth when the proposed virement is up to £25,000 and would result in expenditure being incurred for a purpose which was not envisaged at the time of agreeing the capital budget, or

(b) the single relevant responsible Committee Member when the proposed virement is between £25,000 and £50,000 and would result in objectives and / or targets stated in the relevant Service Plan not being fully achieved, or

(c) Committee when the proposed virement is more than £50,000 and would result in objectives and / or targets stated in the relevant Service Plan not being fully achieved

2.76 To seek the approval of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth to carry forward to the next financial year of budgets for:

(a) items up to £25,000 for any one capital budget as detailed on the Financial Management System and,

(b) items over £25,000 for any one capital budget as detailed on the Financial Management System, to Committee.

2.77 To comply with the Council's procurement policy and regulations concerning the tendering processes to be undertaken in the acquisition of goods and services and the appointment of contractors, as set out in the Council's standing orders relating to contracts for the supply of works, goods or services.

2.78 To prepare and submit reports to Committee, jointly with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, on completion of all contracts where the final expenditure exceeds the approved contract sum by more than the specified amount determined from time to time by the Committee, and which shall initially be set at 3%.

2.79 To ensure that credit arrangements, such as leasing agreements, are not entered into without the prior approval of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth and, if applicable, approval of the scheme through the capital programme.

2.80 To consult with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth and to seek Committee approval where the Director proposes to bid for supplementary credit approvals to be issued by government departments to support expenditure that has not been included in the current year's capital programme.

MAINTENANCE OF RESERVES

Why is this important?

2.81 The local authority must decide the level of general reserves it wishes to maintain before it can decide the level of council tax. Reserves are maintained as a matter of prudence. They enable the authority to provide for unexpected events and thereby protect it from overspending, should such events occur. Reserves for specific purposes may also be maintained, such as the purchase or renewal of capital items.

Key controls

2.82 To maintain reserves in accordance with the *Code of Practice on Local Authority Accounting in the United Kingdom: A Statement of Recommended Practice (the SORP)* (CIPFA/LASAAC) and agreed accounting policies.

2.83 For each reserve established, the purpose, usage and basis of transactions should be clearly identified.

2.84 Authorisation and expenditure from reserves by the appropriate Director in consultation with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

2.85 To advise Committee and / or the full Council on prudent levels of reserves for the authority, and to take account of the advice of the external auditor in this matter.

Responsibilities of Directors

2.86 To ensure that resources are used only for the purposes for which they were intended.

3.0 RISK MANAGEMENT AND CONTROL OF RESOURCES

RISK MANAGEMENT

Why is this important?

3.01 All organisations, whether private or public sector, face risks to people, property and continued operations. Risk is the chance or possibility of loss, damage, injury or failure to achieve objectives caused by an unwanted or uncertain action or event. Risk management is the planned and systematic approach to the identification, evaluation and control of risk. Its objectives are to secure the assets of the organisation and to ensure the continued financial and organisational well-being of the undertaking. In essence it is, therefore, an integral part of good business practice. Risk management is concerned with evaluating the measures an organisation already has in place to manage identified risks and then recommending the action the organisation needs to take to control these risks effectively.

3.02 It is the overall responsibility of Committee to approve the authority's risk management strategy, and to promote a culture of risk management awareness throughout the authority.

Key controls

3.03 The key controls for risk management are:

- (a) procedures are in place to identify, assess, prevent or contain material known risks, and these procedures are operating effectively throughout the authority
- (b) a monitoring process is in place to review regularly the effectiveness of risk reduction strategies and the operation of these controls. The risk management process should be conducted on a continuing basis
- (c) managers know that they are responsible for managing relevant risks and are provided with relevant information on risk management initiatives
- (d) provision is made for losses that might result from the risks that remain

- (e) procedures are in place to investigate claims within required timescales
- (f) acceptable levels of risk are determined and insured against where appropriate
- (g) the authority has identified business continuity plans for implementation in the event of disaster that results in significant loss or damage to its resources.

Responsibilities of Chief Executive Officer

3.04 To prepare and promote the authority's risk management strategy.

3.05 To develop risk management controls in conjunction with other Directors.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

3.06 To effect corporate insurance cover, through external insurance and the internal insurance fund, to negotiate all claims in consultation with other officers, where necessary and approve the payment of all claims from the internal insurance fund.

3.07 To review at least annually all insurances in consultation with other Directors.

3.08 To include all appropriate employees of the authority in a suitable fidelity guarantee insurance.

3.09 For those insurable risks up to the value of £10,000, to have discretion in deciding whether these should be borne by external insurance or the internal fund. Additional risks in excess of £10,000 shall only be accepted for internal funding after seeking the approval of Committee.

3.10 To make ex gratia payments for claims against the Council in respect of non personal injury up to the amount of £1,000.

Responsibilities of Directors

3.11 To notify the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth immediately of any loss, liability or damage that may lead to a claim against the authority, and provide promptly any information or explanation required by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth or the authority's insurers.

3.12 To take responsibility for risk management, having regard to advice from the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth and other specialists (e.g. crime prevention, fire prevention, internal audit, health and safety).

- 3.13 To ensure that there are regular reviews of risk within their departments, including inspections of all assets at frequencies appropriate to the potential risks relating to those assets.
- 3.14 To notify the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth promptly of all new risks, properties or vehicles that require insurance and of any alterations affecting existing insurances.
- 3.15 To consult the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth and the Monitoring Officer on the terms of any indemnity that the authority is requested to give.
- 3.16 To ensure that employees, or anyone covered by the authority's insurances, do not admit liability or make any offer to pay compensation that may prejudice the assessment of liability in respect of any insurance claim.

INTERNAL CONTROLS

Why is this important?

- 3.17 The authority is complex and beyond the direct control of individuals. It therefore requires internal controls to manage and monitor progress towards strategic objectives.
- 3.18 The authority has statutory obligations, and, therefore, requires internal controls to identify, meet and monitor compliance with these obligations.
- 3.19 The authority faces a wide range of financial, administrative and commercial risks, both from internal and external factors, which threaten the achievement of its objectives. Internal controls are necessary to manage these risks.
- 3.20 The system of internal controls is established in order to provide measurable achievement of:
- (a) efficient and effective operations
 - (b) reliable financial information and reporting
 - (c) compliance with laws and regulations
 - (d) risk management.

Key controls

3.21 The key controls and control objectives for internal control systems are:

- (a) key controls should be reviewed on a regular basis and the authority should make a formal statement annually to the effect that it is satisfied that the systems of internal control are operating effectively
- (b) managerial control systems, including defining policies, setting objectives and plans, monitoring financial and other performance and taking appropriate anticipatory and remedial action. The key objective of these systems is to promote ownership of the control environment by defining roles and responsibilities
- (c) financial and operational control systems and procedures, which include physical safeguards for assets, inspection and recording systems, segregation of duties, authorisation and approval procedures and information systems
- (d) an effective internal audit function that is properly resourced. It should operate in accordance with the principles contained in the Internal Auditing Guideline (Auditing Practices Board – 1990) as interpreted within the guidance for internal auditors, set out in CIPFA's Code of Practice for Internal Audit in Local Government in the United Kingdom and with any other statutory obligations and regulations.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

3.22 To assist the authority to put in place an appropriate control environment and effective internal controls which provide reasonable assurance of effective and efficient operations, financial stewardship, probity and compliance with laws and regulations.

Responsibilities of Directors

3.23 To manage processes to check that established controls are being adhered to and to evaluate their effectiveness, in order to be confident in the proper use of resources, achievement of objectives and management of risks.

3.24 To review existing controls in the light of changes affecting the authority and to establish and implement new ones in line with guidance from Director of Resources, Governance and Growth. Directors should also be responsible for removing controls that are unnecessary or not cost or risk effective – for example, because of duplication.

3.25 To ensure staff have a clear understanding of the consequences of lack of control.

AUDIT REQUIREMENTS

INTERNAL AUDIT

Why is this important?

3.26 The requirement for an internal audit function for local authorities is implied by Section 151 of the Local Government Act 1972, which requires that authorities “make arrangements for the proper administration of their financial affairs”. The Accounts and Audit Regulations 2003 (SI 2003 No. 533), regulation 6, more specifically require that a “relevant body shall maintain an adequate and effective system of internal audit of its accounting records and of its system of internal control”.

3.27 Accordingly, internal audit is an independent and objective appraisal function established by the authority for reviewing the system of internal control. It examines, evaluates and reports on the adequacy of internal control as a contribution to the proper, economic, efficient and effective use of resources.

Key controls

3.28 The key controls for internal audit are:

- (a) that it is independent in its planning and operation
- (b) the Head of Internal Audit has direct access to the Head of Paid Service, all levels of management and directly to elected members
- (c) the internal auditors comply with the Internal Auditing Guideline (Auditing Practices Board – 1990) as interpreted within the guidance for internal auditors, set out in CIPFA’s Code of Practice for Internal Audit in Local Government in the United Kingdom and with any other statutory obligations and regulations.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

3.29 To ensure that internal auditors have the authority to:

- (a) access authority premises at reasonable times
- (b) access all assets, records, documents, correspondence and control systems
- (c) receive any information and explanation considered necessary concerning any matter under consideration

- (d) require any employee of the authority to account for cash, stores or any other authority asset under his or her control
- (e) access records belonging to third parties, such as contractors, when required
- (f) directly access the Head of Paid Service, Committee and the Audit and Risk Committee.
- (g) To approve the strategic and annual audit plans prepared by the Head of Internal Audit, which take account of the characteristics and relative risks of the activities involved.
- (h) To ensure that effective procedures are in place to investigate promptly any fraud or irregularity.

Responsibilities of Directors

- 3.30 To ensure that internal auditors are given access at all reasonable times to premises, personnel, documents and assets that the auditors consider necessary for the purposes of their work.
- 3.31 To ensure that auditors are provided with any information and explanations that they seek in the course of their work.
- 3.32 To consider and respond promptly to recommendations in audit reports.
- 3.33 To ensure that any agreed actions arising from audit recommendations are carried out in a timely and efficient fashion.
- 3.34 To notify the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth immediately of any suspected fraud, theft, irregularity, improper use or misappropriation of the authority's property or resources. Pending investigation and reporting, the Director should take all necessary steps to prevent further loss and to secure records and documentation against removal or alteration.
- 3.35 To ensure that new systems for maintaining financial records, or records of assets, or changes to such systems, are discussed with and agreed by the Head of Internal Audit prior to implementation.

EXTERNAL AUDIT

Why is this important?

- 3.36 The Local Government Finance Act 1982 set up the Audit Commission, which is responsible for appointing external auditors to each local authority in England and Wales. The external auditor has rights of access to all documents and information necessary for audit purposes.
- 3.37 The basic duties of the external auditor are defined in the Audit Commission Act 1998 and the Local Government Act 1999. In particular, section 4 of the 1998 Act requires the Audit Commission to prepare a code of audit practice, which external auditors follow when carrying out their duties. The code of audit practice, last issued in March 2002, sets out the auditor's objectives to review and report upon:
- (a) the financial aspects of the audited body's corporate governance arrangements
 - (b) the audited body's financial statements
 - (c) aspects of the audited body's arrangements to manage its

performance, including the preparation and publication of specified performance information and compliance in respect of the preparation and publication of the BVPP.

3.38 The authority's accounts are scrutinised by external auditors, who must be satisfied that the statement of accounts 'presents fairly' the financial position of the authority and its income and expenditure for the year in question and complies with the legal requirements.

Key controls

3.39 External auditors are appointed by the Audit Commission normally for a minimum period of five years. The Audit Commission prepares a code of audit practice, which external auditors follow when carrying out their audits.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

3.40 To ensure that external auditors are given access at all reasonable times to premises, personnel, documents and assets that the external auditors consider necessary for the purposes of their work.

3.41 To ensure there is effective liaison between external and internal audit.

3.42 To work with the external auditor and advise the full Council, Committee and Directors on their responsibilities in relation to external audit.

Responsibilities of Directors

3.43 To ensure that external auditors are given access at all reasonable times to premises, personnel, documents and assets which the external auditors consider necessary for the purposes of their work.

3.44 To ensure that all records and systems are up to date and available for inspection.

PREVENTING FRAUD AND CORRUPTION

Why is it this important?

3.45 The authority will not tolerate fraud and corruption in the administration of its responsibilities, whether from inside or outside the authority.

3.46 The authority's expectation of propriety and accountability is that members and employees at all levels will lead by example in ensuring adherence to legal requirements, rules, procedures and practices.

3.47 The authority also expects that individuals and organisations (e.g. suppliers, contractors, service providers) with whom it comes into contact will act towards the authority with integrity and without thought or actions involving fraud and corruption.

Key controls

3.48 The key controls regarding the prevention of financial irregularities are that:

- (a) the authority has an effective anti-fraud and anti-corruption policy and maintains a culture that will not tolerate fraud or corruption.
- (b) all members and staff act with integrity and lead by example.
- (c) senior managers are required to deal swiftly and firmly with those who defraud or attempt to defraud the authority or who are corrupt.
- (d) high standards of conduct are promoted amongst members by the Standards Committee.
- (e) the maintenance of a register of interests in which any hospitality or gifts accepted must be recorded.
- (f) whistle blowing procedures are in place and operate effectively.
- (g) legislation including the Public Interest Disclosure Act 1998 is adhered to.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

3.49 To develop and maintain an anti-fraud and anti-corruption policy.

3.50 To ensure that all suspected irregularities are reported to the Head of Internal Audit, the Head of the Paid Service, and, where the Head of the Paid Service considers it appropriate, the Audit and Risk Committee.

Responsibilities of Directors

3.51 To ensure that all suspected irregularities are reported to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

3.52 To instigate the authority's local disciplinary procedures where the outcome of an audit or other investigation indicates improper behaviour.

3.53 To ensure that where financial impropriety is discovered, the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is informed, and where sufficient evidence exists to believe that a criminal offence may have been committed, the police are called in to determine with the Crown Prosecution Service whether any prosecution will take place.

3.54 To maintain a departmental register of interests.

3.55 To maintain adequate and effective internal control arrangements.

ASSETS

SECURITY

Why is this important?

3.56 The authority holds assets in the form of property, vehicles, equipment, furniture and other items worth many millions of pounds. It is important that assets are safeguarded and used efficiently in service delivery, and that there are arrangements for the security of both assets and information required for service operations. An up-to-date asset register is a prerequisite for proper fixed asset accounting and sound asset management. Acquisitions and disposal of assets should be undertaken in accordance with the Council's Asset Management Plan and follow the more detailed procedures contained within Standing Orders relating to contracts for the supply of works, goods or services (para 21).

Key controls

3.57 The key controls for the security of resources such as land, buildings, fixed plant machinery, equipment, software and information are:

- (a) resources are used only for the purposes of the authority and are properly accounted for.
- (b) resources are available for use when required.
- (c) resources no longer required are disposed of in accordance with the law and the regulations of the authority so as to maximise benefits.
- (d) an asset register is maintained for the authority, assets are recorded when they are acquired by the authority and this record is updated as changes occur with respect to the location and condition of the asset.
- (e) all staff are aware of their responsibilities with regard to safeguarding the authority's assets and information, including the requirements of the Data Protection Act and software copyright legislation, found primarily in the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.
- (f) all staff are aware of their responsibilities with regard to safeguarding the security of the authority's computer systems, including maintaining restricted access to the information held on them and compliance with the authority's computer and internet security policies.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

3.58 To ensure that an asset register is maintained in accordance with good practice for all fixed assets with a value in excess of £10,000. The function of the asset register is to provide the authority with information about fixed assets so that they are:

- safeguarded
- used efficiently and effectively
- adequately maintained.

3.59 To receive the information required for accounting, costing and financial records from each Director.

3.60 To ensure that assets are valued in accordance with the *Code of Practice on Local Authority Accounting in the United Kingdom: A Statement of Recommended Practice (the SORP)* (CIPFA/LASAAC).

Responsibilities of Directors

3.61 The appropriate Directors shall maintain a record in a form approved by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth for all plant and machinery and moveable assets currently owned or used by the authority. Any use of property by a department or establishment other than for direct service delivery should be supported by documentation identifying terms, responsibilities and duration of use.

3.62 To ensure that lessees and other prospective occupiers of council land are not allowed to take possession or enter the land until a lease or agreement, in a form approved by the Director in consultation with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, has been established as appropriate, which will include appropriate insurance cover.

In respect of any asset transfer whether it be for land, buildings or any other property owned by the Council such ownership is not transferred until such time as full payment is made by the purchaser. In all transfers the agreement will include an appropriate claw back provision.

Further any grants given by the Council to land or property will include an appropriate claw back provision.

3.63 To ensure the proper security of all buildings and other assets under their control.

3.64 Where land or buildings are surplus to requirements, a recommendation for sale should be the subject of a report by the Director concerned to Committee which shall make a recommendation on the asset's future to Council.

- 3.65 To pass title deeds to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth who is responsible for custody of all title deeds.
- 3.66 To ensure that no authority asset is subject to personal use by an employee without proper authority.
- 3.67 To ensure the safe custody of vehicles, equipment, furniture, stock, stores and other property belonging to the authority.
- 3.68 To ensure that the department maintains a register (inventory) of moveable assets in accordance with arrangements defined by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.
- 3.69 To ensure that assets are identified, their location recorded and that they are appropriately marked and insured.
- 3.70 To consult the Head of Internal Audit in any case where security is thought to be defective or where it is considered that special security arrangements may be needed.
- 3.71 To ensure cash holdings on premises are kept to a minimum.
- 3.72 To ensure that keys to safes and similar receptacles are carried on the person of those responsible at all times; loss of any such keys must be reported to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth as soon as possible.
- 3.73 To record all disposal or part exchange of assets that should normally be by competitive tender or public auction, unless, following consultation with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, Committee agrees otherwise.
- 3.74 To arrange for the valuation of assets for accounting purposes to meet requirements specified by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.
- 3.75 To ensure that all employees are aware that they have a personal responsibility with regard to the protection and confidentiality of information, whether held in manual or computerised records. Information may be sensitive or privileged, or may possess some intrinsic value, and its disclosure or loss could result in a cost to the authority in some way.

INVENTORIES

Responsibilities of Directors

3.76 To maintain inventories and record an adequate description of furniture, fittings, equipment, plant and machinery under their control.

3.77 To carry out an annual check of all items on the inventory in order to verify location, review, condition and to take action in relation to surpluses or deficiencies, annotating the inventory accordingly. Attractive and portable items such as computers, cameras and video recorders should be identified with security markings as belonging to the authority.

3.78 To make sure that property is only used in the course of the authority's business, unless the Director concerned has given permission otherwise.

STOCKS

Responsibilities of Directors

3.79 To make arrangements for the care and custody of stocks and stores in the department.

3.80 To ensure stocks are maintained at reasonable levels and are subject to a regular independent physical check. All discrepancies should be investigated and pursued to a satisfactory conclusion.

3.81 To investigate and remove from the authority's records (i.e. write off) discrepancies as necessary after consultation with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, or to obtain Committee approval if they are in excess of £5,000.

3.82 To authorise or write off disposal of redundant stocks and equipment. Procedures for disposal of such stocks and equipment should be by competitive quotations or auction, unless, following consultation with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, Committee decides otherwise in a particular case.

3.83 To seek Director of Resources, Governance and Growth approval to the write-off of redundant stocks and equipment in excess of a £1,000 for any individual item or £5,000 for any group of items.

3.84 To supply the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth with certificates of stock held at the end of each financial year, together with such returns as may be required by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth to complete the accounts of the Council.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY

Why is this important?

3.85 Intellectual property is a generic term that includes inventions and writing. If these are created by the employee during the course of employment, then, as a general rule, they belong to the employer, not the employee. Various Acts of Parliament cover different types of intellectual property.

3.86 Certain activities undertaken within the authority may give rise to items that may be patentable, for example, software development. These items are collectively known as intellectual property.

Key controls

3.87 In the event that the authority decides to become involved in the commercial exploitation of inventions, the matter should proceed in accordance with the authority's approved intellectual property procedures.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

3.88 To develop and disseminate good practice through the authority's intellectual property procedures.

Responsibilities of Directors

3.89 To ensure that controls are in place to ensure that staff do not carry out private work in council time and that staff are aware of an employer's rights with regard to intellectual property.

ASSET DISPOSAL

(Asset acquisition is covered in Standing Orders relating to contracts for the supply of works, goods or services – paragraph 21.)

Why is this important?

3.90 It would be uneconomic and inefficient for the cost of assets to outweigh their benefits. Obsolete, non-repairable or unnecessary resources should be disposed of in accordance with the law and the regulations of the authority.

Key controls

3.91 Assets for disposal are identified and are disposed of at the most appropriate time, and only when it is in the best interests of the authority, and best price is obtained, bearing in mind other factors, such as environmental issues. For items of significant value, disposal should be by competitive tender or public auction.

3.92 Procedures protect staff involved in the disposal from accusations of personal gain.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

3.93 To issue guidelines representing best practice for disposal of assets, other than property, for which the Chief Executive shall be responsible.

3.94 To ensure appropriate accounting entries are made to remove the value of disposed assets from the authority's records and to include the sale proceeds if appropriate.

Responsibilities of Chief Executive

3.95 To issue guidelines representing best practice for disposal and / or acquisition of property, in accordance with the Council's Asset Management Plan.

Responsibilities of Directors

3.96 To seek advice from the appropriate Director on the disposal of surplus or obsolete property, materials, stores or equipment.

3.97 To ensure that income received for the disposal of an asset is properly banked and coded.

TREASURY MANAGEMENT

Why is this important?

3.98 Many millions of pounds pass through the authority's books each year. This led to the establishment of codes of practice. These aim to provide assurances that the authority's money is properly managed in a way that balances risk with return, but with the overriding consideration being given to the security of the authority's capital sum.

Key controls

3.99 That the authority's borrowings and investments comply with the CIPFA's Treasury Management in Local Authorities - Code of Practice, and subsequent guidance notes and with the authority's treasury management policy statement.

3.100 The Council adopts the key recommendations of CIPFA's – "Treasury Management in the Public Services: Code of Practice" (the code), as described in section 4 of that code.

3.101 The Council will create and maintain, as the cornerstones for effective treasury management:

- a treasury management policy statement, stating the policies and objectives of its treasury management activities,
- suitable treasury management practices (TMP's), setting out the manner in which the organisation will seek to achieve those policies and objectives, and prescribing how it will manage and control those activities.

3.102 The Council will receive reports on its treasury management policies, practices and activities, including, as a minimum, an annual strategy and plan in advance of the year, and an annual report after its close in the form described in the TMP's.

3.103 The Council delegates responsibility for the implementation and monitoring of its treasury management polices and practices to Committee, and for the execution and administration of treasury management decisions to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, who will act in accordance

with the council's policy statement and TMP's and, if he / she is a CIPFA member, CIPFA's standard of professional practice on treasury management.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth – treasury management and banking

3.104 To arrange the borrowing and investments of the authority in such a manner as to comply with CIPFA's Treasury Management in Local Authorities - Code of Practice and the authority's annual treasury management policy statement.

3.105 To report to the Committee at or before the start of each financial year on the treasury management strategy proposed for the coming financial year and not less than once in each financial year on treasury management activities undertaken during the course of the year and the exercise of delegated treasury management powers. One such report shall comprise an annual report on treasury management for presentation by 31 July of the succeeding financial year.

3.106 To operate bank accounts as are considered necessary. The opening or closing of any bank account shall require the approval of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth. These accounts shall be operated within the following guidelines:

(a) The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth shall at least every five years review the Council's banking arrangements and report thereon to the Council.

(b) Cheques, including National Giro and other payment forms, shall be ordered only on the authority of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, who shall make proper arrangements for their safe custody.

(c) Cheques and transfers between bank accounts may only be signed by those officers so authorised by the Council.

(d) Cheques drawn on the Council's main bank accounts may bear the facsimile signature of the Chief Executive.

(e) Cheques not exceeding £5,000 shall bear one signature, which may be the Chief Executive's facsimile signature.

(f) Cheques over £5,000 but not exceeding £100,000 shall bear one handwritten signature of any of the authorised signatories, one of which may also be that of the Chief Executive, whose facsimile signature may also be on the cheque.

(g) Cheques over £100,000 shall bear the handwritten signatures of any two of the authorised signatories, one of which may also be that of the Chief Executive, whose facsimile signature may also be on the

cheque.

(h) Regulations (a), (b) and (c) above shall also apply to any other instructions for sums to be paid out of any of the Council's bank, National Giro or other accounts.

(i) A payment using the Clearing House Automatic Payments System (CHAPS) via the electronic processing system, may only be made after the details input into the electronic processing system have been checked, signed, dated and timed by one authorised officer and subsequently approved upon the electronic processing system by another authorised officer.

(j) If the electronic processing system is not used, a CHAPS payment may be made by transmitting a facsimile instruction to the Council's bankers, only after that instruction has been signed by two different authorised signatories.

3.107 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth shall be authorised to incur an overdraft at the Council's bank not exceeding a figure as may be determined by the Council.

Responsibilities of Directors – treasury management and banking

3.108 To follow the instructions on banking issued by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth – investments and borrowing

3.109 All Committee decisions on borrowing, investment, leasing or capital financing shall be delegated to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth who shall be required to act in accordance with CIPFA's 'Treasury Management in Local Authorities - Code of Practice'.

3.110 To ensure that all investments of money are made in the name of the authority or in the name of nominees approved by the full council.

3.111 To ensure that all securities that are the property of the authority or its nominees and the title deeds of all property in the authority's ownership are held in the custody of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

3.112 To effect all borrowing in the name of the authority.

3.113 To act as the authority's registrar of stocks, bonds and mortgages and to maintain records of all borrowing of money by the authority.

Responsibilities of Directors – investments and borrowing

3.114 To ensure that loans are not made to third parties and that interests are not acquired in companies, joint ventures or other enterprises without the approval of the full Council, following consultation with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth – funds held for third parties

3.115 To arrange, where funds are held on behalf of third parties, for their secure administration, and to maintain written records of all transactions.

3.116 To ensure that trust funds are operated within any relevant legislation and the specific requirements for each trust.

Responsibilities of Directors – funds held for third parties

3.117 To arrange for all funds received in trust, and / or on behalf of third parties, to be notified to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth in order that the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth may make suitable arrangements for those funds to be held, on account, in the name of the local authority, unless otherwise agreed by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

3.118 All officers acting as trustees by virtue of their official position shall deposit any sums relating to the third party with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth and request any payment from such funds via the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth - imprest (petty cash) accounts

3.119 To authorise the provision of such petty cash accounts to meet minor expenditure on behalf of the authority as are considered appropriate and to prescribe rules for operating these accounts. Such accounts are to be used to defray minor items of expenditure and should not exceed the amount prescribed from time to time by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

3.120 To determine the petty cash limit and to maintain a record of all transactions and petty cash advances made, and periodically to review the arrangements for the safe custody and control of these advances.

Responsibilities of Directors – imprest (petty cash) accounts

3.121 To ensure that employees operating a petty cash account:

- (a) obtain and retain vouchers to support each payment from the account. Where appropriate, an official receipted VAT invoice must be obtained
- (b) make adequate arrangements for the safe custody of the cash and vouchers.
- (c) produce upon demand by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth cash and all vouchers to the total value of the amount issued
- (d) record transactions promptly
- (e) reconcile and balance the account at least monthly; reconciliation sheets to be signed and retained by the account holder
- (f) provide the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth with a certificate of the value of the account held at 31 March each year
- (g) ensure that the float is never used to cash personal cheques or to make personal loans and that the only payments into the account are the reimbursement of the float and change relating to purchases where an advance has been made. Income received on behalf of the Council must not be paid into the account but banked or paid to the Council as provided by Regulation 4.20.
- (h) on leaving the authority's employment or otherwise ceasing to be entitled to hold a petty cash account, an employee shall account to the Director concerned for the amount advanced to him or her.

STAFFING

Why is this important?

3.122 In order to provide the highest level of service, it is crucial that the authority recruits and retains high calibre, knowledgeable staff, qualified to an appropriate level.

Key controls

3.123 The key controls for staffing are:

- (a) an appropriate staffing strategy and policy exists, in which staffing requirements and budget allocation are matched

(b) procedures are in place for forecasting staffing requirements and cost

(c) controls are implemented that ensure that staff time is used efficiently and to the benefit of the authority

(d) checks are undertaken prior to employing new staff to ensure that they are appropriately qualified, experienced and trustworthy.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

3.124 To produce an annual staffing budget in liaison with Directors, ensuring that budget provision exists for all existing employees, vacant posts approved to be filled during the financial year and any approved new positions to be filled during the financial year.

Responsibilities of Directors

3.125 To monitor staff activity to ensure adequate control over such costs as sickness, overtime, training and temporary staff.

3.126 To ensure that the staffing budget is not exceeded without due authority and that it is managed to enable the agreed level of service to be provided.

3.127 To ensure that the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is immediately informed if the staffing budget is likely to be materially (over £5,000 or 10% of the budget whichever is lower) over- or under-spent.

4.0 FINANCIAL SYSTEMS AND PROCEDURES

GENERAL

Why is this important?

4.01 Service's have many systems and procedures relating to the control of the authority's assets, including purchasing, costing and management systems. Departments are increasingly reliant on computers for their financial management information. The information must therefore be accurate and the systems and procedures sound and well administered. They should contain controls to ensure that transactions are properly processed and errors detected promptly.

4.02 The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth has a professional responsibility to ensure that the authority's financial systems are sound and should therefore be notified of any new developments or changes.

Key controls

4.03 The key controls for systems and procedures are:

- (a) basic data exists to enable the authority's objectives, targets, budgets and plans to be formulated
- (b) performance is communicated to the appropriate managers on an accurate, complete and timely basis
- (c) early warning is provided of deviations from target, plans and budgets that require management attention
- (d) operating systems and procedures are secure.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

- 4.04 To make arrangements for the proper administration of the authority's financial affairs, including to:
- (a) issue advice, guidance and procedures for officers and others acting on the authority's behalf
 - (b) determine the accounting systems, form of accounts and supporting financial records
 - (c) establish arrangements for audit of the authority's financial affairs
 - (d) approve any new financial systems to be introduced
 - (e) approve any changes to be made to existing financial systems.

Responsibilities of Directors

- 4.05 To ensure that accounting records are properly maintained and held securely.
- 4.06 To ensure that vouchers and documents with financial implications are not destroyed, except in accordance with arrangements approved by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.
- 4.07 To ensure that a complete management trail, allowing financial transactions to be traced from the accounting records to the original document, and vice versa, is maintained.
- 4.08 To incorporate appropriate controls to ensure that, where relevant:
- (a) all input is genuine, complete, accurate, timely and not previously processed
 - (b) all processing is carried out in an accurate, complete and timely manner
 - (c) output from the system is complete, accurate and timely.
- 4.09 To ensure that the organisational structure provides an appropriate segregation of duties to provide adequate internal controls and to minimise the risk of fraud or other malpractice.
- 4.10 To ensure there is a documented and tested disaster recovery plan to allow information system processing to resume quickly in the event of an interruption.

- 4.11 To ensure that systems are documented and staff trained in operations.
- 4.12 To consult with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth before changing any existing system or introducing new systems.
- 4.13 To establish a scheme of delegation identifying officers authorised to act upon the Director's behalf in respect of payments, income collection and placing orders, including variations, and showing the limits of their authority.
- 4.14 To supply lists of authorised officers, with specimen signatures and delegated limits, to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth for approval, together with any subsequent variations.
- 4.15 To ensure that effective contingency arrangements, including back-up procedures, exist for computer systems. Wherever possible, back-up information should be securely retained in a fireproof location, preferably off site or at an alternative location within the building.
- 4.16 To ensure that, where appropriate, computer systems are registered in accordance with data protection legislation and that staff are aware of their responsibilities under the legislation.
- 4.17 To ensure that relevant standards and guidelines for computer systems issued by Directors are observed.
- 4.18 To ensure that computer equipment and software are protected from loss and damage through theft, vandalism, etc.
- 4.19 To comply with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 and subsequent legislation and, in particular, to ensure that:
- (a) only software legally acquired and installed by the authority is used on its computers
 - (b) staff are aware of legislative provisions
 - (c) in developing systems, due regard is given to the issue of intellectual property rights.

INCOME AND EXPENDITURE

INCOME

Why is this important?

4.20 Income can be a vulnerable asset and effective income collection systems are necessary to ensure that all income due is identified, collected, receipted and banked properly. It is preferable to obtain income in advance of supplying goods or services as this improves the authority's cashflow and also avoids the time and cost of administering debts.

Key controls

4.21 The key controls for income are:

- (a) all income due to the authority is identified and charged correctly, in accordance with an approved charging policy, which is regularly reviewed
- (b) all income is collected from the correct person, at the right time, using the correct procedures and the appropriate stationery
- (c) all money received by an employee on behalf of the authority is paid without delay to the Director of Customer Services Services or, as the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth directs, to the authority's bank account, and properly recorded. The responsibility for cash collection should be separated from that:
 - for identifying the amount due
 - for reconciling the amount due to the amount received
- (d) effective action is taken to pursue non-payment within defined timescales
- (e) formal approval for debt write-off is obtained
- (f) appropriate write-off action is taken within defined timescales
- (g) appropriate accounting adjustments are made following write-off action
- (h) all appropriate income documents are retained and stored for the defined period in accordance with the document retention schedule
- (i) money collected and deposited is reconciled to the bank account by a person who is not involved in the collection or banking process.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

4.22 To agree arrangements for the collection of all income due to the authority and to approve the procedures, systems and documentation for its

collection.

4.23 To approve, or to order and supply to Services, all receipt forms, books or tickets and similar items and to satisfy himself or herself regarding the arrangements for their control.

4.24 To approve all debts to be written off in consultation with the relevant Directors up to the approved limit of £2,500 for each individual debt.

Responsibilities of Directors

- 4.25 To establish a charging policy for the supply of goods or services, including the appropriate charging of VAT, and to review it regularly, in line with corporate policies.
- 4.26 To separate the responsibility for identifying amounts due and the responsibility for collection, as far as is practicable.
- 4.27 To establish and initiate appropriate recovery procedures in consultation with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, including legal action where necessary, for debts that are not paid promptly.
- 4.28 To issue official receipts or to maintain other documentation for income collection.
- 4.29 To ensure that at least two employees are present when post is opened so that money received by post is properly identified and recorded.
- 4.30 To hold securely receipts, tickets and other records of income for the appropriate period.
- 4.31 To lock away all income to safeguard against loss or theft, and to ensure the security of cash handling.
- 4.32 To ensure that income is paid fully and promptly into the appropriate authority bank account in the form in which it is received. Appropriate details should be recorded on to paying-in slips to provide an audit trail.
- 4.33 To ensure income is not used to cash personal cheques or other payments.
- 4.34 To supply the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth with details relating to work done, goods supplied, services rendered or other amounts due, to enable the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth to record correctly the sums due to the authority and to ensure accounts are sent out promptly. Income due to the Council should not generally be demanded by means other than the raising of accounts. Directors have a responsibility to assist the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth in collecting debts that they have originated, providing any further information requested by the debtor, and pursuing the matter on the authority's behalf.
- 4.35 To ensure that levels of cash held in secure safes on premises under their control do not exceed the approved level set by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.
- 4.36 To keep a record of every transfer of money between employees of the authority. The receiving officer must sign for the transfer and the transferor

must retain a copy.

- 4.37 To recommend to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth all debts to be written off and to keep a record of all sums written off up to the approved limit (£2,500 as detailed in 4.24 above).
- 4.38 Once raised, no bona fide debt may be cancelled, except by full payment or by its formal writing off. A credit note to replace a debt can only be issued to correct a factual inaccuracy or administrative error in the calculation and/or billing of the original debt.
- 4.39 To obtain the approval of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth when writing off debts, and the approval of the single relevant responsible Committee Member, where required, ie for the writing off of debts in excess of £2,500.
- 4.40 To notify the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth of outstanding income relating to the previous financial year as soon as possible after 31 March in line with the timetable determined by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth and in any event, not later than 30 April.
- 4.41 To ensure that appropriate accounting adjustments are made following write-off action.

ORDERING AND PAYING FOR WORK, GOODS AND SERVICES

Why is this important?

- 4.42 Public money should be spent with demonstrable probity and in accordance with the authority's policies. Authorities have a statutory duty to achieve best value in part through economy and efficiency. The authority's procedures should help to ensure that services obtain value for money from their purchasing arrangements. These procedures should be read in conjunction with the authority's Standing orders relating to contracts for the supply of works, goods or services.

General

- 4.43 Every member and employee of the authority has a responsibility to declare any links or personal interests that they may have with purchasers, suppliers and / or contractors if they are engaged in contractual or purchasing decisions on behalf of the authority, in accordance with appropriate codes of conduct.

4.44 Official orders must be in a form approved by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth. Official orders must be issued for all work, goods or services to be supplied to the authority, except for supplies of utilities, periodic payments such as rent or rates, petty cash purchases or other exceptions specified by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth. Standard terms and conditions must not be varied without the approval of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

4.45 Apart from petty cash, the normal method of payment from the authority shall be by cheque or other instrument or approved method, drawn on the authority's bank account by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth. The use of direct debit shall require the prior agreement of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

4.46 Official orders must not be raised for any personal or private purchases, nor must personal or private use be made of authority contracts.

Key controls

4.47 The key controls for ordering and paying for work, goods and services are:

- (a) all goods and services are ordered only by authorised persons and are correctly recorded
- (b) all goods and services shall be ordered in accordance with the authority's standing orders relating to contracts for the supply of works, goods or services, unless they are purchased from sources within the authority
- (c) goods and services received are checked to ensure they are in accordance with the order. Where practical, goods should not be received by the person who placed the order
- (d) payments are not made unless goods have been received by the authority to the correct price, quantity and quality standards
- (e) all payments are made to the correct person, for the correct amount and are properly recorded, regardless of the payment method
- (f) all appropriate evidence of the transaction and payment documents are retained and stored for the defined period, in accordance with the document retention schedule
- (g) all expenditure, including VAT, is accurately recorded against the right budget and any exceptions are corrected

- (h) in addition, the effect of e-business / e-commerce and electronic purchasing requires that processes are in place to maintain the security and integrity of data for transacting business electronically.

Responsibilities of Head of Resources and Governance.

- 4.48 To ensure that all the authority's financial systems and procedures are sound and properly administered.
- 4.49 To approve any changes to existing financial systems and to approve any new systems before they are introduced.
- 4.50 To approve the form of official orders and, in conjunction with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, the associated terms and conditions.
- 4.51 To make payments from the authority's funds on the Director's authorisation (or by other officer's under delegated powers awarded by a Director) that the expenditure has been duly incurred in accordance with financial regulations.
- 4.52 To make payments, whether or not provision exists within the budget, where the payment is specifically required by statute or is made under a court order.
- 4.53 To make payments to contractors on the certificate of the appropriate Directors, (or by other officer's under delegated powers awarded by a Director) which must include details of the value of work, retention money, amounts previously certified and amounts now certified.
- 4.54 To provide advice and encouragement on making payments by the most economical means.
- 4.55 To ensure that a budgetary control system is established that enables commitments incurred by placing orders to be shown against the appropriate budget allocation so that they can be taken into account in budget monitoring reports.

Responsibilities of Directors

- 4.56 To ensure that unique pre-numbered official orders are used for all goods and services, other than the exceptions specified in 4.44.
- 4.57 To ensure that orders are only used for goods and services provided to the Service. Individuals must not use official orders to obtain goods or services for their private use.
- 4.58 To ensure that only those staff authorised by him or her sign orders and to

maintain an up-to-date list of such authorised staff, including specimen signatures identifying in each case the limits of their authority. The authoriser of the order should be satisfied that the goods and services ordered are appropriate and needed, that there is adequate budgetary provision and that quotations or tenders have been obtained if necessary. Best value principles should underpin the authority's approach to procurement. Value for money should always be achieved.

4.59 To ensure that goods and services are checked on receipt to verify that they are in accordance with the order. This check should be carried out by a different officer from the person who authorised the order.

4.60 To ensure that payment is not made unless a proper VAT invoice addressed to the Council has been received, checked, coded and certified for payment, confirming:

(a) receipt of goods or services

(b) that the invoice is addressed in the name of the Council and has not previously been paid

(c) that expenditure has been properly incurred and is within budget provision

(d) that prices and arithmetic are correct and accord with quotations, tenders, contracts or catalogue prices

(e) correct accounting treatment of tax

(f) that the invoice is correctly coded

(g) that discounts have been taken where available

(h) that appropriate entries will be made in accounting records.

4.61 To ensure that two authorised members of staff are involved in the ordering, receiving and payment process. If possible, a different officer from the person who signed the order, and in every case, a different officer from the person checking a written invoice, should authorise the invoice.

4.62 To ensure that the Service maintains and reviews periodically a list of staff approved to authorise invoices. Names of authorising officers together with specimen signatures and details of the limits of their authority shall be forwarded to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth for approval.

4.63 To ensure that payments are not made on a photocopied or faxed invoice,

statement or other document other than the formal invoice. Any instances of these being rendered should be reported to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

4.64 To ensure that the Service obtains best value from purchases by taking appropriate steps to obtain competitive prices for goods and services of the appropriate quality, in line with best value principles and the authority's Standing orders relating to contracts for the supply of works, goods or services.

4.65 To utilise any central purchasing procedures available in putting purchases, where appropriate, out to competitive quotation or tender. These will comply with the Standing orders relating to contracts for the supply of works, goods or services and will cover:

- (a) authorised officers and the extent of their authority
- (b) advertisement for tenders
- (c) procedure for creating, maintaining and revising a standard list of contractors
- (d) selection of tenderers
- (e) compliance with UK and EU legislation and regulations
- (f) procedures for the submission, receipt, opening and recording of tenders
- (g) the circumstances where financial or technical evaluation is necessary
- (h) procedures for negotiation
- (i) acceptance of tenders
- (j) the form of contract documentation
- (k) cancellation clauses in the event of corruption or bribery
- (l) contract records.

4.66 To ensure that employees are aware of the National code of conduct for local government employees contained in the Great Yarmouth Borough Council - Employees Handbook.

4.67 To ensure that loans, leasing or rental arrangements are not entered into

without prior agreement from the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth. This is because of the potential impact on the authority's borrowing powers, to protect the authority against entering into unapproved credit arrangements and to ensure that value for money is being obtained.

4.68 To notify the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth of outstanding expenditure relating to the previous financial year as soon as possible after 31 March in line with the timetable determined annually by Director of Resources, Governance and Growth and, in any case, not later than 30 April.

4.69 With regard to contracts for construction and alterations to buildings and for civil engineering works, to document and agree with the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth the systems and procedures to be adopted in relation to financial aspects, including certification of interim and final payments, checking, recording and authorising payments, the system for monitoring and controlling capital schemes and the procedures for validation of subcontractors' tax status.

4.70 To notify the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth immediately of any expenditure to be incurred as a result of statute / court order where there is no budgetary provision.

4.71 To ensure that all appropriate payment records are retained and stored for the defined period, in accordance with the document retention schedule.

PAYMENTS TO EMPLOYEES AND MEMBERS

Why is this important?

4.72 Staff costs are the largest item of expenditure for most authority services. It is therefore important that payments are accurate, timely, made only where they are due for services to the authority and that payments accord with individuals' conditions of employment. It is also important that all payments are accurately and completely recorded and accounted for and that members' allowances are authorised in accordance with the scheme adopted by the full council.

Key controls

4.73 The key controls for payments to employees and members are:

(a) proper authorisation procedures are in place and that there is adherence to corporate timetables in relation to:

- starters
- leavers

- variations
- enhancements

and that payments are made on the basis of timesheets or claims

- (b) frequent reconciliation of payroll expenditure against approved budget
- (c) all appropriate payroll documents are retained and stored for the defined period in accordance with the document retention schedule
- (d) that HM Revenue and Customs regulations are complied with.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

- 4.74 To arrange and control secure and reliable payment of salaries, wages, or other emoluments to existing and former employees, in accordance with procedures prescribed by him or her with the approval of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, on the due date.
- 4.75 To record and make arrangements for the accurate and timely payment of tax, superannuation and other deductions.
- 4.76 To make arrangements for payment of all travel and subsistence claims or financial loss allowance.
- 4.77 To make arrangements for paying members travel or other allowances upon receiving the prescribed form, duly completed and authorised.
- 4.78 To provide advice and encouragement to secure payment of salaries and wages by the most economical means.
- 4.79 To ensure that there are adequate arrangements for administering superannuation matters on a day-to-day basis.
- 4.80 To ensure that all appropriate payroll documents are retained and stored for the defined period in accordance with the document retention schedule.

Responsibilities of Directors

- 4.81 To ensure appointments are made in accordance with the regulations of the authority and approved establishments, grades and scale of pay and that adequate budget provision is available.
- 4.82 To notify the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth of all

appointments, terminations or variations which may affect the pay or pension of an employee or former employee, in the form and to the timescale required by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

4.83 To ensure that adequate and effective systems and procedures are operated, so that:

- payments are only authorised to bona fide employees
- payments are only made where there is a valid entitlement
- conditions and contracts of employment are correctly applied
- employees' names listed on the payroll are checked at regular intervals to verify accuracy and completeness.

4.84 To send an up-to-date list of the names of officers authorised to sign records to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth, together with specimen signatures, who shall make available to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth copies of those signatures of officers authorised to sign timesheets and claims.

4.85 To ensure that payroll transactions are processed only through the payroll system. Directors should give careful consideration to the employment status of individuals employed on a self-employed consultant or subcontract basis. HM Revenue and Customs applies a tight definition for employee status, and in cases of doubt, advice should be sought from the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

4.86 To certify travel and subsistence claims and other allowances. Certification is taken to mean that journeys were authorised and expenses properly and necessarily incurred, and that allowances are properly payable by the authority, ensuring that cost-effective use of travel arrangements is achieved. Due consideration should be given to tax implications and that the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is informed where appropriate.

4.87 To ensure that claims for expenses and travel allowances are made in a timely manner and not more than two months from the date they were incurred. Claims made after this period will only be paid in exceptional circumstances at the discretion of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth. VAT receipts for petrol in respect of car mileage claims must be attached and of sufficient value to cover the total number of miles being claimed.

4.88 To ensure that the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth is notified of the details of any employee benefits in kind, to enable full and complete reporting within the income tax self-assessment system.

Responsibilities of Members

4.89 To submit claims for members' expenses and travel allowances on a monthly basis and, in any event, within one month of the year end.

TAXATION

Why is this important?

4.90 Like all organisations, the authority is responsible for ensuring its tax affairs are in order. Tax issues are often very complex and the penalties for incorrectly accounting for tax are severe. It is therefore very important for all officers to be aware of their role.

Key controls

4.91 The key controls for taxation are:

- (a) Directors are provided with relevant information and kept up to date on tax issues
- (b) Directors are instructed on required record keeping
- (c) all taxable transactions are identified, properly carried out and accounted for within stipulated timescales
- (d) records are maintained in accordance with instructions
- (e) returns are made to the appropriate authorities within the stipulated timescale.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

4.92 To complete a monthly return of VAT inputs and outputs to HM Revenue and Customs.

4.93 To provide details to HM Revenue and Customs regarding the construction industry tax deduction scheme.

Responsibilities of Directors

4.94 To ensure that the correct VAT liability is attached to all income due and that all recoverable VAT complies with HM Revenue and Customs regulations.

4.95 To ensure that, where construction and maintenance works are undertaken, the contractor fulfils the necessary construction industry tax deduction requirements.

4.96 To ensure that all persons employed by the authority are added to the authority's payroll and tax deducted from any payments, except where the individuals are bona fide self-employed or are employed by a recognised staff agency.

5.0 EXTERNAL ARRANGEMENTS

PARTNERSHIPS

Why is this important?

5.01 Partnerships play a key role in delivering community strategies and in helping to promote and improve the well-being of the area. Local authorities are working in partnership with others – public agencies, private companies, community groups and voluntary organisations. Local authorities still deliver services, but their distinctive leadership role is to bring together the contributions of the various stakeholders. They therefore need to deliver a shared vision of services based on user wishes.

5.02 Local authorities will mobilise investment, bid for funds, champion the needs of their areas and harness the energies of local people and community organisations. Local authorities will be measured by what they achieve in partnership with others.

General

5.03 The main reasons for entering into a partnership are:

- (a) the desire to find new ways to share risk
- (b) the ability to access new resources
- (c) to provide new and better ways of delivering services
- (d) to forge new relationships.

5.04 A partner is defined as either:

- (a) an organisation (private or public) undertaking, part funding or participating as a beneficiary in a project, or
- (b) a body whose nature or status give it a right or obligation to support the project.

5.05 Partners participate in projects by:

- (a) acting as a project deliverer or sponsor, solely or in concert with others
- (b) acting as a project funder or part funder
- (c) being the beneficiary group of the activity undertaken in a project.

5.06 Partners have common responsibilities:

- (a) to be willing to take on a role in the broader programme appropriate to the skills and resources of the partner organisation
- (b) to act in good faith at all times and in the best interests of the partnership's aims and objectives
- (c) be open about any conflict of interests that might arise
- (d) to encourage joint working and promote the sharing of information, resources and skills between public, private and community sectors
- (e) to hold confidentially any information received as a result of partnership activities or duties that is of a confidential or commercially sensitive nature
- (f) to act wherever possible as ambassadors for the project.

Key controls

5.07 The key controls for authority partners are:

- (a) if appropriate, to be aware of their responsibilities under the authority's financial regulations and Standing orders relating to

- contracts for the supply of works, goods or services.
- (b) to ensure that risk management processes are in place to identify and assess all known risks
 - (c) to ensure that project appraisal processes are in place to assess the viability of the project in terms of resources, staffing and expertise
 - (d) to agree and accept formally the roles and responsibilities of each of the partners involved in the project before the project commences
 - (e) to communicate regularly with other partners throughout the project so that problems can be identified and shared to achieve their successful resolution

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

5.08 To advise on effective controls that will ensure that resources are not wasted.

5.09 To advise on the key elements of funding a project. They include:

- (a) scheme appraisal for financial viability in both the current and future years
- (b) risk appraisal and management
- (c) resourcing, including taxation issues
- (d) audit, security and control requirements
- (e) carry-forward arrangements.

5.10 To ensure that the accounting arrangements are satisfactory.

Responsibilities of Directors

5.11 To obtain the approval of the Executive Management Team and Committee before entering into any negotiations which may lead to partnership working by the Council either as lead partner or participant.

5.12 To ensure that, before entering into agreements with external bodies, financial and risk management appraisals have been prepared for the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth and that the impact on the Council's budget is clearly identified

5.13 To ensure that such agreements and arrangements do not impact adversely upon the services provided by the authority.

5.14 To ensure that all agreements and arrangements are properly documented.

5.15 To provide appropriate information to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth to enable a note to be entered into the authority's statement of accounts concerning material items.

EXTERNAL FUNDING

Why is this important?

5.16 External funding is potentially a very important source of income, but funding conditions need to be carefully considered to ensure that they are compatible with the aims and objectives of the authority. Local authorities are increasingly encouraged to provide seamless service delivery through working closely with other agencies and private service providers. Funds from external agencies such as the National Lottery, single regeneration budget, neighbourhood renewal fund and others provide additional resources to enable the authority to deliver services to the local community. However, in some instances, although the scope for external funding has increased, such funding is linked to tight specifications and may not be flexible enough to link to the authority's overall plan.

Key controls

5.17 The key controls for external funding are:

- (a) to ensure that key conditions of funding and any statutory requirements are complied with and that the responsibilities of the accountable body are clearly understood
- (b) to ensure that funds are acquired only to meet the priorities approved in the policy framework by the full council
- (c) to ensure that any match-funding requirements are given due consideration prior to entering into long-term agreements and that future revenue budgets reflect these requirements.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

5.18 To ensure that all funding notified by external bodies is received and properly recorded in the authority's accounts.

5.19 To ensure that the match-funding requirements are considered prior to entering into the agreements and that future revenue budgets reflect these requirements.

5.20 To ensure that audit requirements are met.

5.21 To ensure that all claims for funds are made by the due date.

Responsibilities of Directors

5.22 To ensure that all information to support claims for funds are made by the due date.

5.23 To ensure that the project progresses in accordance with the agreed project and that all expenditure is properly incurred and recorded.

WORK FOR THIRD PARTIES

Why is this important?

5.24 Current legislation enables the authority to provide a range of services to other bodies. Such work may enable a unit to maintain economies of scale and existing expertise. Arrangements should be in place to ensure that any risks associated with this work is minimised and that such work is intra vires.

Key controls

5.25 The key controls for working with third parties are:

- (a) to ensure that proposals are costed properly in accordance with guidance provided by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.
- (b) to ensure that contracts are drawn up using guidance provided by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth and that the formal approvals process is adhered to.
- (c) to issue guidance with regard to the financial aspects of third party contracts and the maintenance of the contract register.

Responsibilities of Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

5.26 To issue guidance with regard to the financial aspects of third party contracts and the maintenance of the contract register.

Responsibilities of Directors

5.27 To ensure that the approval of Committee is obtained before any negotiations are concluded to work for third parties.

5.28 To maintain a register of all contracts entered into with third parties in accordance with procedures specified by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

5.29 To ensure that appropriate insurance arrangements are made in accordance with the requirements of the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.

5.30 To ensure that the authority is not put at risk from any bad debts.

5.31 To ensure that no contract is subsidised by the authority.

- 5.32 To ensure that, wherever possible, payment is received in advance of the delivery of the service.
- 5.33 To ensure that the Service / unit has the appropriate expertise to undertake the contract.
- 5.34 To ensure that such contracts do not impact adversely upon the services provided for the authority.
- 5.35 To ensure that all contracts are properly documented.
- 5.36 To provide appropriate information to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth to enable a note to be entered into the annual statement of accounts.

Bibliography and references:

Ref:	Document:	Publisher / Year:	Source / Author:
Internal Documents			
C.11	Anti - Fraud and Corruption Policy	GYBC / Corporate Manual – Chapter 21	Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
2.54 (d)	Asset Management Plan	GYBC / not yet published	Chief Executive
3.56	Asset Register	GYBC / on-going	Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
2.54	Capital Strategy	GYBC / not yet published	Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
A.2	Constitution	GYBC / 2004	www.great-yarmouth.gov.uk – Monitoring Officer
D.5 / 4.16	Data Protection Act	GYBC / 2005	(see document Employee Handbook) – Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
1.38	Document Retention Schedule	GYBC / not yet published	Corporate Manual – Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
4.66	Employee Handbook	GYBC / 2005	GYBC Intranet - Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
D.5	Freedom of Information	GYBC / undated	www.great-yarmouth.gov.uk – Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
3.87	Intellectual Property Procedures	To be written	To be written
3.57 (f)	Internet Security Policy	GYBC / 2005 Incorporated within Employee Handbook (Appendix O)	(see document Employee Handbook) – Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
3.52	Local Disciplinary Procedures	GYBC / undated Incorporated within Employee Handbook / p 37	(see document Employee Handbook) – Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
A.2	Members Code of Conduct (within constitution)	GYBC / 2004	www.great-yarmouth.gov.uk – Monitoring Officer
2.78	Procurement Policy	Policy 2008 - 2011 – in need of updating and review	Resources, Governance and Growth
3.48, 3.54	Register of Interests – Members	GYBC – Members' Code of Conduct / 1998 Incorporated within Constitution	www.great-yarmouth.gov.uk – Monitoring Officer
3.48, 3.54	Register of Interests – Officers	GYBC – Code of Conduct / 1998 Incorporated within Employee Handbook / Appendix G	(see document Employee Handbook) – Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
3.68	Register of moveable assets	GYBC / ongoing	Each Director
3.50	Risk Management Strategy	GYBC / undated – [Approved November 2004]	www.great-yarmouth.gov.uk – Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
3.50	Whistleblowing Procedures	GYBC / Corporate Manual – Chapter 21	Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

Ref:	Document:	Publisher / Year:	Source / Author:
External publications			
1	Best Value Accounting Code of Practice 2006 (BVACOP)	CIPFA / 2006 (updated annually)	Copy held by: Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
9	Code of Audit Practice	Audit Commission / March 2002	Copy held by: Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
5	Code of Practice for Internal Audit in Local Government	CIPFA / 2006 (updated annually)	Copy held by: Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
2	Code of Practice in Local Authority Accounting in the United Kingdom: A Statement of Recommended Practice (the SORP)	CIPFA / 2006 (updated annually)	Copy held by: Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
3	Code of Practice on Local Authority in the United Kingdom: A Statement of Recommended Practice 2006 – Disclosure Checklist	CIPFA / 2006 (updated annually)	Copy held by: Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
4	Code of Practice on Local Authority in the United Kingdom: A Statement of Recommended Practice 2006 – Guidance Notes for Practitioners	CIPFA / 2006 (updated annually)	Copy held by: Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
6	Treasury Management in Local Authorities – Code of Practice and Guidance for Chief Finance Officers	CIPFA / 1996	Copy held by: Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
7	Treasury Management in the Public Services - Code of Practice and Cross Sectoral Guidance Notes	CIPFA / 2001	Copy held by: Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
8	Treasury Management in the Public Services - Guidance Notes for Local Authorities including Police Authorities and Fire Authorities	CIPFA / 2002	Copy held by: Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
Legislation			
	Audit Commission Act 1998		Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
	Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988		Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
3.57	Data Protection Act 1998		Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
	S.I. 2000 No. 896 The Local Government (Best Value) Performance Indicators Order 2000		Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

Ref:	Document:	Publisher / Year:	Source / Author:
	S.I. 2001 No. 2237 The Local Authorities (Executive and Alternative Arrangements) (Modification of Enactments and other provisions) (England) Order 2001		Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
	S.I. 2003 No. 533 The Accounts and Audit Regulations 2003		Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
	S.I. 2006 No. 564 The Accounts and Audit (Amendment) (England) Regulations 2006		Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

Great Yarmouth Borough Council
Contract Standing Orders

Contents

1. PURPOSE	4
2. SCOPE	4
3. EXCEPTION	4
4. WAIVER TO PROCUREMENT / TENDER PROCEDURE.....	5
5. OPERATIONAL EMERGENCY.....	5
6. AUTHORITIES AND CONTROLS.....	6
7. SEGREGATION OF DUTIES.....	6
8. OFFICER CONDUCT.....	6
A) CONFLICT OF INTERESTS OF OFFICERS.....	6
B) ETHICAL PROCUREMENT	6
9. FRAMEWORK ARRANGEMENTS.....	6
10. EXISTING CONTRACTS.....	7
11. NEW CONTRACT DEVELOPMENT.....	8
12. THE PUBLIC SERVICES (SOCIAL VALUE) ACT 2012.....	9
13. AGGREGATION OF DEMAND.....	9
14. MARKET RESEARCH.....	9
15. DEVELOPMENT OF THE SPECIFICATION	9
16. SUPPLIER SELECTION.....	10
A) SUPPLIER DATABASES.....	10
B) APPROVED STANDING LISTS.....	10
C) QUALIFICATION OF SUPPLIERS	11
17. ADVERTISING A QUOTATION OR TENDER	11
18. INFORMATION TO POTENTIAL SUPPLIERS	12
19. MEETINGS/DISCUSSIONS WITH TENDERERS	12
20. LOW VALUE PROCEDURES.....	12
21. MEDIUM LEVEL PROCEDURES	13
22. HIGH LEVEL PROCEDURES	14
23. EU PROCEDURES.....	15
24. RECEIPT OF TENDERS	15
25. OPENING OF TENDERS	16
26. LATE TENDERS.....	16
27. ERRORS OR DISCREPANCIES IN TENDERS	16
28. ERROR BY THE BUDGET HOLDER	17

29. TENDER EVALUATION	17
30. ACCEPTANCE OF TENDERS	18
31. DEBRIEFING UNSUCCESSFUL TENDERERS.....	19
32. NEGOTIATION.....	19
A) POST-TENDER NEGOTIATION	19
B) POST CONTRACT NEGOTIATION.....	20
33. FORM OF CONTRACT	20
34. PURCHASE ORDER.....	21
35. PRICING.....	22
36. TRANSFER OF UNDERTAKINGS (PROTECTION OF EMPLOYMENT) REGULATIONS 1981 (TUPE).....	22
37. LIVING WAGE	22
38. VARIATIONS.....	22
39. CANCELLATION OF PURCHASE ORDER/CONTRACT.....	23
40. TERMINATION DUE TO SUPPLIER NON PERFORMANCE	23
41. RECEIPT OF GOODS & SERVICES AND PAYMENT	23
42. DISPOSAL OF ASSETS	24
43. AUDIT REQUIREMENTS	24
44. ARCHIVE RECORDS	25
45. REVIEW OF CONTRACT STANDING ORDERS.....	25

APPENDIX A GLOSSARY OF TERMS

26

APPENDIX B PROCUREMENT AUTHORITY THRESHOLDS

28

APPENDIX C EXEMPTION / WAIVER FORM

30

1. Purpose

These Contract Standing Orders are made in accordance with the requirements of Section 135 of the Local Government Act 1972. They do not provide guidelines on what is the best way to purchase works, supplies (goods) and services. They set out the minimum requirements to be followed. Further information and guidelines are set out in the Council's Procurement Guide.

The overall purpose of these Contract Standing Orders is threefold:

- a) to ensure probity, transparency and equality in the procurement of works, goods and services,
- b) to ensure the Council gets best value from its procurements, and
- c) to protect those involved in the procurement process.

2. Scope

These Contract Standing Orders apply to all contracts for goods, services, works, concessions and capital projects undertaken by or on behalf of the Council with the exception of:

- a) the acquisition of any interest in land.
- b) the lending or borrowing of money.
- c) employment of an individual employee.
- d) the disposal of property (including any interest in land).
- e) contracts secured through a compliant framework consortium agreement.
- f) the engagement of Counsel
- g) the awarding of Grants to third sector organisations

3. Exception

Subject to the requirements of the EU Directives, Acts of Parliament and UK Public Contract Regulations tendering is not required:

- a) for supplies or materials which are available only as proprietary or patented articles from one contractor or supplier and for which the appropriate Director certifies that there is no reasonably satisfactory alternative available in the European Union and for repairs to, or the supply of, parts of existing proprietary or patented articles, including machinery or plant;
- b) where the purchase is via a purchasing consortium, e.g. Government Procurement Service (GPS) or ESPO, provided that the purchasing consortium has, for the item(s) concerned, complied with the EU Procedure where the contract exceeds the EU threshold;
- c) for works of art, museum specimens or historical documents;

- d) for a procurement which constitutes a variation or extension of an existing contract and either:
 - i) the variation or extension is specifically provided for in the original contract (although in such cases the appropriate Budget Holder should first consider whether re-tendering would be likely to result in better value for the Council), or
 - ii) the estimated value of the variation or extension is less than the greater of £5,000 or 10% of the original contract sum.

- e) for supplies or materials to be purchased at a public auction;

4. Waiver to procurement / tender procedure

In the exceptional circumstances when insufficient Suppliers are available from the market to enable competitive offers to be obtained or an Exception (as detailed above) applies a request to proceed using the Exemption / Waiver Form (Appendix C) must be made to the Director of Resources, Governance & Growth.

Such requests for a waiver must be in writing clearly recording how you will prove Value for Money by adopting this approach. The requests will be monitored by Internal Audit to ensure compliance and the delivery of Value for Money.

5. Operational emergency

An Operational Emergency is a situation that is the result of an unforeseen event over which the Council has no control. This procedure must not be used when a requirement has become late due to lack of planning on the part of the Budget Holder.

- a) In cases of Operational Emergency, requirements should be obtained from existing contracts as a priority.

- b) In the event of an existing contract being unavailable, the Budget Holder can contact an available supplier direct to provide assistance.

Extreme caution must be exercised when considering procurement as a result of urgency. Regulations must not be compromised and full documentation must be completed regardless of the urgency of the requirement.

A full audit trail must be maintained throughout the procurement process.

Urgent requests should clearly state the reason for urgency and a specific delivery date supported by written justification within 48 hours.

6. Authorities and controls

No commitment to purchase, contract, lease, hire, or rent goods, services or works on behalf of the Council can be made without appropriate budget authority and delegated procurement authority.

Budget Authority rests with the Budget Holder. All expenditure must have prior budgetary approval. A budget is approved when the Budget Holder has received sanction through the budget process for the annual budget.

This authority permits the Budget Holder to authorise, sign or issue purchase orders or contracts, or make any other form of commitment to suppliers within the limits of their delegated authority and with due regard to these Contract Standing Orders.

Refer to Appendix B Procurement Authority Thresholds

7. Segregation of duties

The activities relating to the contracting and procurement processes are segregated between the following phases:

- Purchase Order
- Commitment (contract signatory) / Authorisation
- Receipt
- Payment

Segregation of duties must exist between raising Purchase Orders and commitment of expenditure and also receipt and payment.

8. Officer conduct

a) Conflict of interests of officers

Officers employed by the Council must comply with Paragraph 5.4 of the Council's "Code of Conduct", relating to conflicts of interest.

b) Ethical procurement

Procurement should only be undertaken by officers adhering to the strictest professional standards. The Council recognises the Chartered Institute of Purchasing & Supply (CIPS) Code of Ethics¹ as the appropriate standard.

9. Framework Arrangements

¹ <http://www.cips.org/Documents/About%20CIPS/CIPS%20Code%20of%20Ethics.pdf>

In this Standing Order, a Framework Arrangement is a formal tendered arrangement which sets out terms and conditions under which specific purchases can be made throughout the term of the agreement. The appropriate Budget Holder may procure supplies, services or works from the successful framework tenderer(s) in unpredicted quantities at various times during the period that the agreement is in force. For this purpose, a Framework Arrangement may be set up by the Council, GPS, ESPO or some other Consortium, association or similar body of which the Council is a member or party.

In any case where a Framework Arrangement in accordance with these standing orders is in place:

- a) Orders to be placed against a known price do not require further competition unless required by law.
- b) In circumstances where the price was not specified under the Framework Arrangement an order can only be placed if further competition has been undertaken with all of the suppliers specified in the Arrangement. This competition may be undertaken utilising the Council's Standard Request for Quotation or other means detailed within the Framework Arrangement terms. Further competition must be evaluated using the criteria as stated in the Framework Arrangement.

When advertising for a Framework Arrangement the advertisement must indicate:

- a) That it is a Framework Arrangement which is being tendered.
- b) The parties eligible to participate in the Framework Arrangement.
- c) The duration of the Arrangement.
- d) The expected maximum number of suppliers.
- e) The estimated total value of the contracts to be covered by the Arrangement.
- f) The award criteria for choosing suppliers and subsequent criteria for placing orders.

10. Existing contracts

Where a Contract has been awarded it must be used for all requirements that relate to that contract. A detailed contracts register will be maintained by the Group Manager for Resources and made available for all Budget Holders to access on the Procurement intranet.

The Council and its contracted Suppliers make a considerable investment in negotiating and preparing contracts and when a contract has been awarded to a contractor it must be honoured. To place purchase orders / contracts with alternative suppliers other than the contract holder may frustrate the contract and open the Council to expensive litigation.

In the exceptional occasions where a Budget Holder feels that better value can be obtained from sources alternative to those that have been awarded a Council contract, approval to

use those alternatives must be first obtained from the Group Manager or the Director of Resources, Governance & Growth.

Contracts should not be awarded that compete with an existing contract for similar requirements without the express approval of the Group Manager and Director of Resources, Governance & Growth.

11. New contract development

When a Contract does not exist to meet a requirement the Budget Holder must follow the appropriate Competitive Process in compliance with Contract Thresholds².

Before any procurement is begun the appropriate Budget Holder must estimate the value of the contract and must keep a written record of that estimate as part of the Contract Plan³ in the Department.

- a) In the case of contracts for:
 - i) the hire of goods for an indeterminate period or
 - ii) the provision of services for a period in excess of 4 years or for an indeterminate period.

the estimated value of the contract for the purpose of these Standing Orders must be the estimated monthly cost multiplied by 48 or; where monthly costs are inapplicable the estimated annual cost multiplied by 4.

- b) In the case of contracts for the supply of goods or services over a period where the Council wishes to call off as required or has a series of regular requirements by standing order the estimated value of the contract is either:
 - i) the aggregate value of similar contracts over the previous 12 months (adjusted for any known changes in demand);
 - ii) the estimated value of similar contracts over the next 12 months; or
 - iii) if the contract is for a definite term of more than 12 months, the estimated value for the period of the contract.
- c) For all supplies, services and works not covered by the above, the estimated value for the purpose of these Standing Orders must be the total estimated value of the supplies, services or works to be supplied over the period covered by the contract.

² Refer to Appendix B - Procurement Authority Thresholds

³ Refer to Appendix C- Contract Plan

- d) The value of a concession for the purpose of this Standing Order is the estimated gross value of the service before income.

12. The Public Services (Social Value) Act 2012

The Act requires that the Council has regard to economic, social and environmental well-being in connection with public services contracts and considers the following in all procurement exercises for services:

- a) how what is proposed to be procured might improve the economic, social and environmental well-being of the relevant area, and
- b) how, in conducting the process of procurement, it might act with a view to securing that improvement.

The Council must consider under subsection (3)(b) only matters that are relevant to what is proposed to be procured and, in doing so, must consider the extent to which it is proportionate in all the circumstances to take those matters into account.

13. Aggregation of demand

The separation of a requirement (disaggregation) into several smaller orders or contracts to avoid seeking the correct Procurement Authority or to avoid appropriate levels of competition is not permitted.

When a Budget Holder instigates a quotation / tender procedure they must inform the Group Manager or their delegated manager of that requirement to enable the potential for aggregation to be managed.

14. Market research

Access to accurate and relevant commercial intelligence and knowledge of the marketplace is necessary in deciding which option is best. Relevant markets need to be researched and understood, however, care must be taken to ensure this does not distort competition or prejudice any bidder or potential bidder.

15. Development of the specification

The Budget Holder, with the aid of specialist functions as appropriate, is responsible for compiling the specification which must include performance criteria. Budget Holders must use caution when communicating with potential suppliers during this stage of the process, to avoid compromising the Council's ability to maintain transparency, equal treatment and impartiality.

It is the responsibility of the Budget Holder to source and contract with suppliers who will supply goods and services that will meet the Budget Holder's specification as well as the commercial requirements of the contract.

To ensure best value specifications should be generic and outcome-based and not limit offers

of equivalent solutions.

16. Supplier selection

The Council is committed to obtaining value for money through the procurement of all goods, services, works and capital projects. It is essential to ensure that only the most capable suppliers are selected as contractors to the Council.

The selection and elimination of suppliers within a procurement exercise can only be made on grounds of capability and that assessment should include a balance of technical, professional and financial issues as appropriate. It is essential that any criteria used to select suppliers are notified to them in advance. This information should be contained within tender documents or where appropriate included within the OJEU advertisement.

a) Supplier databases

Various Supplier/Contractor databases exist to assist organisations select suppliers these data bases are available on-line, e.g. Construction-line, Sells, Yellow Pages, Kelly's and professional bodies such as RICS. When using these lists care must be taken not to only use one source of information.

b) Approved Standing Lists

This Standing Order applies to contracts with an estimated value of less than the relevant EU threshold.

The list must be compiled and maintained by the appropriate Budget Holder and indicate the categories of contract and the values or amounts in respect of those categories for which those suppliers are approved.

Applications for inclusions to the list must be sought through advertisement in appropriate publications, websites or other media. This will depend on the estimated value and market conditions. The advertisement must include any minimum criteria to be applied in determining whether a contractor will be selected for the list or any part of the list.

The list must be regularly maintained and refreshed, at least every 3 years, and existing contractors must be contacted to confirm their details and inclusion on the list. Records relating to those responding to advertisement, those successful and those rejected must be kept for audit purposes, including any reasons for rejection.

Invitations to tender for a contract using an Approved Standing List must be sent to:

- not less than four of the suppliers selected by the appropriate Budget Holder, from among those approved for a contract of the relevant category and amount or value; or
- where fewer than four suppliers are approved for a contract of the relevant category

and amount or value, all those suppliers.

c) Qualification of suppliers

Where open advertisements are used to attract potential suppliers the selection process will form a qualifying stage of the tender exercise. Qualification can only be assessed on the grounds of financial soundness, professional and technical ability.

There are 2 ways in which this process can be used and these follow the principles of the EU procedures.

- i) Either, the pre-qualification questionnaire is sent to suppliers together with the scoring mechanism and only the suppliers that meet the required standard are then issued with the full tender documents.
- ii) Or, suppliers are issued with the full Invitation to Tender (ITT) document of which the qualification questionnaire forms the first section.

The first option should be used where it is likely that the requirements of the Council, due to the risk or nature of the contract, will eliminate a reasonable proportion of suppliers. This approach will remove the possibility of large numbers of suppliers completing full tender documents unnecessarily. Conversely, where appropriate, the qualification stage within a full tender will be used to ensure that minimum standards are met and will allow evaluation of a wider range of tender offers. This will reduce the overall timescale of the tender.

The purpose of pre-qualification is not to reduce the number of potential bidders but to ensure that those tenders that are evaluated are from suppliers that are capable of meeting the quality standards required. Where possible pre-qualification should be as simple as possible and this may involve as little as a requirement of tenderers to confirm that they can meet the stated minimum standard required.

17. Advertising a quotation or tender

An advertisement should be published to invite potential suppliers to apply to complete a Pre-Qualification Questionnaire and to participate in a quotation / tender process when;

- a) A legal requirement to do so exists; for example an OJEU notice as part of EU Procurement Procedures.
- b) An appropriate Approved Standing List does not exist.
- c) You need to increase competition for the goods, services or works.
- d) The value of the requirement exceeds £50,000.
- e) The value of the requirement is less than £50,000 and it is determined as advantageous to do so.
- f) The contract is for a services concession

The advertisement shall be raised in conjunction with the Group Manager. The Advertisement shall be placed in an appropriate publication dependent upon the value and specialised nature of the requirement, e.g.:

- a) Local or National Newspaper.

- b) Trade or Professional Journal.
- c) GYBC, Regional or National public sector website, e.g. UK Government Contracts Finder⁴
- d) Official Journal of the European Union (OJEU)⁵.

18. Information to potential suppliers

All potential suppliers must receive the same detailed information that must reflect the business and Budget Holder requirements. Information given to tenderers that relates to anticipated volumes or value of business is for guidance only. It must be clearly stated that the Council will not be bound by this information.

Tenderers must not be informed of the identity of competitors, as this can lead to supplier collusion and cartels and a potential loss of confidence among tenderers.

19. Meetings/discussions with tenderers

If it is part of the contract strategy to hold meetings with tenderers before tenders are submitted best practice is to hold one meeting with all suppliers present unless the Budget Holder and the Group Manager determines that it disadvantageous to do so. This approach ensures that all tenderers receive the same information.

If one or more tenderer makes enquiries for clarification during the course of tendering, the Budget Holder, in the interests of fairness, will advise all tenderers of the question and answers given. This is without attributing the source of the original query.

No meetings or discussions shall take place during the tendering process between tenderers and the Budget Holder without the prior agreement of the Group Manager.

20. Low value procedures

This procedure should be used by Budget Holders teams with delegated authority for expenditure below £5,000 where the requirement is of low value/low risk.

⁴ <https://online.contractsfinder.businesslink.gov.uk/?site=1000&lang=en>

⁵ Where there is a requirement to advertise in the OJEU this notice must appear before other advertisements and notices elsewhere.

These requirements are normally straightforward and require nothing more than the Council's Standard Contract & Purchase Conditions. The Budget Holder is required to obtain 2 verbal competitive quotes which should be recorded to show that good value has been obtained.

The Purchase Order Number must be provided to the supplier at the time that the commitment is made. The Budget Holder must confirm Purchase Order details in writing within 24 hours of placing an order using a Purchase Order generated by Integra. The use of facsimile or e-mail should always be considered as an alternative to telephone enquiries.

21. Medium level procedures

- a) For expenditure between £5001 and £15,000 a minimum of two written quotations from potential Suppliers is required on the Council's standard Quotation Request Form⁶. This quotation may be returned by post, facsimile or e-mail and at least 3 suppliers should be invited.

Commitments must be confirmed immediately with a Purchase Order generated by Integra and must include all associated costs including delivery and VAT. The Purchase Order must be marked "CONFIRMATION ORDER" if the supplier has already been instructed to proceed.

The maximum duration of any contract should not exceed 1 year and automatic renewal or extension of contract is not permitted without referral to the Director of Resources, Governance & Growth.

- b) For all requirements between £15,000 and £50,000 at least three contractors must be invited to quote and respond. The enquiry may be issued utilising facsimile, e-mail or postal services and must be made on the Council's standard Quotation Request Form. The Form should include the Budget Holder's specific requirements and the Standard Contract & Purchase Conditions to be used. It is also essential that the following is clearly stated:
- i) the lowest priced quotation may not be accepted.
 - ii) the Council is under no obligation to accept any quotation.
 - iii) The Quotation will incorporate the phrase "your quotation must be despatched to arrive at this office by... (time) on ... (date)".

After the closing date and time all received quotations should be opened together within the department by at least two independent officers. Records of quotations sought and received must be retained for audit purposes.

The maximum duration of any contract should not exceed 3 years and automatic renewal or extension of contract is not permitted without referral to the Director of Resources, Governance & Growth. Additionally the Quotation must be referred to

⁶ Located in the Procurement Guide
the Group Manager when any of the following apply regardless of the contract value:

- i) The contract period will extend beyond 12 months.
- ii) The contract will require special terms and conditions of contract.
- iii) The Standard Contract & Purchase Conditions may need to be modified and/or amended.
- iv) The supplier insists on using their own Terms and Conditions of Contract.

Commitments must be confirmed immediately with a Purchase Order generated on Integra and must include all associated costs including delivery and VAT. The

Purchase Order must be marked "CONFIRMATION ORDER" if the supplier has already been instructed to proceed.

Where requirements are complex and potentially high risk the high level procedures should be followed and full tender documentation used instead of the quotation Request Form.

22. High level procedures

- a) For all requirements valued between £50,000 and the relevant EU threshold at least 3 competitive tenders must be sought. The Council's standard documentation should be used, including the Standard Contract & Purchase Conditions. The evaluation criteria and scoring methodology must be clearly set out in the ITT documents and it is also essential that the following is clearly stated:
- i) The lowest priced tender may not be accepted.
 - ii) The Council is under no obligation to accept any tender.
 - iii) All tenders must be submitted in a plain, sealed package, using the special "TENDER RETURN" address label or envelope supplied for the purpose, clearly marked with the reference number of the tender, the opening time and closing date.
 - iv) The invitation will incorporate the phrase "your tender must be sealed and despatched so as to arrive at this office by... (time) on ... (date)".
 - v) The package/envelope should have no indication of, or reference to, the name of the tenderer.

To ensure transparency, equality of access and opportunity to local businesses all tenders will be advertised on the Council website, Contract Finder and in a local newspaper, expressing the nature and purpose of the contract or stating where further details may be obtained and inviting expressions of interest. If appropriate the Budget Holder may also give such notice in an appropriate trade or professional journal.

The tender must be referred to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth when any of the following apply:

- i) The contract period will extend beyond 36 months.
- ii) The contract is an extension of an existing contract.
- iii) The contract will require special terms and conditions of contract.
- iv) The Standard Contract & Purchase Conditions may need to be modified and/or amended.

23. EU procedures

This procedure must be used for all requirements which are valued above 95% of the current EU Threshold. All contracts must be advertised in the Official Journal of the European Union (OJEU) and may also be advertised elsewhere as appropriate, but this must be following the OJEU notice publication.

There are four procurement routes that are available to use under the EU Directives and the choice of these procedures must be appropriate to the contract in question.

- a) Open – this procedure is preferred by the Council, as it has the shortest timescales and is arguably most transparent. Any company who replies to the advertisement in the OJEU will be issued the ITT.
- b) Restricted – this is a two-stage process where the full ITT is only provided to bidders that are successfully assessed in the Pre-Qualification Questionnaire.
- c) Negotiated – following advertisement and pre-qualification, the Council enters into negotiations with usually at least three companies before awarding the contract. The scope for using the Negotiated Procedure is limited by EU Regulations and must be justified; the most common circumstance being where the contract specification cannot be established with sufficient precision to permit the award of the contract by selection of the best tender according to the rules governing open or restricted procedures.
- d) Competitive Dialogue – this is a two-stage process. The first stage "the dialogue" allows for discussion between the invited bidders (no less than 3) and the Council. At the end of the dialogue phase bidders are invited to submit proposals which are then evaluated using the previously issued criteria.

Budget Holders will follow the appropriate procedures as detailed in the EU Procurement Directives and in the UK Public Contract Regulations, ensuring that all mandatory timescales are adhered to. Please see the procurement guidance for further details.

24. Receipt of Tenders

On receipt, the tenders shall be stamped with time and date and retained unopened in a secure environment until the opening date and time. The Director of Resources, Governance and Growth shall be responsible for the safekeeping of tenders for contracts over £50,000 until opening. All other tenders shall be recorded by the Budget Holder on a tender schedule sheet including "No Tenders" and "Late Tenders".

If for any reason it becomes clear that insufficient time has been allowed for the preparation of tenders, the closing date may be extended. All tenderers must be advised of any change in the closing date, extension of time allowed, or of any other change in the tender arrangements.

25. Opening of Tenders

Tenders must be opened at the same time, in the presence of two officers designated for the purpose by the Director responsible for the contract to which the tender relates, together with an officer designated by the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth. It is also recommended to include one other person not associated with the tender requirement this may or may not be a Member. No such tender shall be opened until after the date and time appointed for the final receipt of tenders for the proposed contract or sub-contract.

On opening tenders, each person present will sign each tender as near as possible to the

price or costing detail. Any changes or modifications made by the tenderer must be marked as such and signed by each member of the opening team.

26. Late tenders

No Tender received after other tenders have been opened will be opened or accepted.

A Tender received late but before the other tenders have been opened may be considered if there is evidence that it was despatched by post or other means early enough to be received in due time in normal circumstances.

A Tender rejected due to late delivery will not be recorded nor included in the analysis process and will be returned to the tenderer.

27. Errors or Discrepancies in Tenders

Where examination of tenders reveals errors or discrepancies which would affect the tender figures in an otherwise successful tender, the tenderer is to be given details of such errors and discrepancies and afforded an opportunity of confirming or withdrawing the offer.

Where a tender is for a fixed sum and is for measured work calculated on Bills of Quantity with rates or Activity Schedules and the arithmetical calculations are erroneous the tenderer may confirm either the rate (or rates) or the total for that particular item or the tenderer may withdraw the offer. Where the Contractor has agreed to confirm their offer, any revision to the arithmetic total will require a compensating adjustment to provide a build up of cost to agree with the tendered sum.

Where a tender is for measured work calculated on Bills of Quantity with rates or Activity Schedules and is not for a fixed sum and the arithmetical calculations are erroneous the tenderer may confirm either the rate (or rates) or the total for that particular item or the tenderer may withdraw that offer.

If the tenderer withdraws, the next tender in competitive order is to be examined and then dealt with in the same way.

Any exception to this procedure must be authorised by the Director of Resources, Governance & Growth.

If a supplier discovers after receiving a contract that their tender had contained a genuine error, they must be asked to submit a detailed explanation of their case. If that demonstrates to the satisfaction of the Budget Holder that the error or omission was genuine, the revised details may be accepted subject to their approval within the relevant financial authority and the supplier's bid remaining competitive.

Otherwise, the supplier must be required to stand by their tender or the contract may in extreme circumstances be terminated. This course of action must be at the discretion of the Budget Holder, in discussion with their Head of Department. If in any doubt of the action to be taken refer to the Director of Resources, Governance & Growth.

28. Error by the Budget Holder

If the Budget Holder finds an error in the requirement or specification of a tender, all potential suppliers must be informed of the correction and if necessary be given additional time to reply by extension of the tender return date.

If, following the issue of a Purchase Order, the Budget Holder finds a genuine error made in the process of placing the Purchase Order; the Budget Holder should advise the supplier and jointly discuss corrective action. The corrective action may be accepted subject to approval within the relevant financial authority.

In exceptional cases, cancellation of the contract may be necessary after discussion with the supplier and the Budget Holder.

29. Tender evaluation

The Budget Holder with delegated authority is responsible for leading the commercial evaluation procedure within the tender assessment team. Tender evaluation will utilise the services of any other specialists deemed necessary. The evaluation process must be objectively followed using a team approach and by moderating scoring. All records of the evaluation process must be retained for audit purposes.

The purpose of the evaluation is to identify the most economically advantageous tender, which will be a balance of cost and quality. The Budget Holder must draw up an evaluation matrix and methodology early in the process and this must be shared with the tenderers as part of the ITT documents. It is good practice to allot a weighting system to the scoring to enable greater emphasis to be attributed to the key outcomes required.

The evaluation criteria must be relevant and proportionate and linked to the subject matter of the contract. These criteria will often include the following:

Quality - technical merit, aesthetic and functional characteristics, environmental characteristics, after sales service, technical assistance, delivery date and delivery period and period of completion.

Whole life cost - price, running costs, maintenance, consumables, spares and disposal costs.

30. Acceptance of Tenders

The appropriate Budget Holder may accept from valid tenders received, in accordance with the decided award criterion:

- a) the lowest tender, if that was the award criterion, provided that the tender is not more than 10 per cent above the estimated value; or
- b) the most economically advantageous tender, if that was the award criterion and if one tender achieves an overall highest combined quality and cost score; or
- c) any other tender only after consultation with the Director of Resources, Governance & Growth and after taking legal advice on the impact of EU Directives and subject to the appropriate Budget Holder making a written report; or
- d) in the case of sales or concessions the highest tender, if that was the award criterion, provided that the tender is not more than 10 per cent below the estimated value.

A Budget Holder may not reject an abnormally low tender without first giving the Tenderer the opportunity to explain the tendered price.

Acceptance of a tender must be in writing and may in some cases be in the form of an official purchase order and must be signed by the appropriate Director or by an Officer designated by him/her. The “acceptance” must not prejudice any formal contract required by Standing Order 33.

The appropriate Budget Holder must inform all tenderers of the name of the successful tenderer and (where practical) the amount of the tender accepted and (without connecting particular prices to particular tenderers) the prices submitted by other tenderers.

31. Debriefing unsuccessful tenderers

The Budget Holder must be prepared to explain to unsuccessful tenderers why their tenders were not accepted. Unsuccessful tenderers have a legal right to be debriefed, based on their tender, if they choose to make such a request. This is also good practice as it can help suppliers to improve and better compete for future business.

Debriefing of an unsuccessful tenderer should only be arranged once the contract has been awarded and accepted by the supplier, and all unsuccessful tenderers have been informed. Debriefing in depth is likely to be needed only in respect of strategic or significant contracts. In doing so the Buyer must recognise and respect the confidentiality of information received from other tenderers.

32. Negotiation

All supplier negotiations should be controlled and led by the Budget Holder with delegated procurement authority. The Budget Holder should determine a strategy for the negotiation, irrespective of whether the negotiation concerns a new purchase, a renewal, or a supplier generated change. The Budget Holder may decide to involve other specialists as appropriate.

The EU Directives do not permit price negotiation, however clarification is utilised to

explore and understand the technical aspects of a tender. The result of clarification discussions may be an adjustment to the cost proposal.

a) Post-tender negotiation

All post tender negotiations must be transparent and be carried out with all appropriate suppliers to remove possibility of preferential treatment of tenderers. No negotiations may take place under this Standing Order unless the tender documents specifically reserve the right to do so.

Post tender negotiation is the process whereby negotiation takes place with one or more selected tenderers after tenders have been assessed, in order to secure the value for money of the awarded contract or purchase order.

Post tender negotiation is a powerful tool available to the Budget Holder, and if used responsibly can result in the improvement of lead-times or the provision of additional services, as well as lower pricing in some very limited circumstances. It will not always be practical, or appropriate, to use post tender negotiation. All discussions and concessions must be recorded and retained in the Contract file and confirmed with the supplier. Under no circumstances should prices tendered by one tenderer be disclosed and / or used to “negotiate” other tenderer’s prices down. This is an unethical practice and could be damaging to suppliers and the Council.

b) Post contract negotiation

Post contract negotiation refers to any negotiation which seeks to alter the contract conditions or which has any other direct implication for the delivery of goods or management of the contracted service, and which takes place after the award of contract.

Either party can initiate post contract negotiation.

Post contract negotiation must be conducted with the express authority of the Group Manager and should only be conducted with those personnel within the supplier’s organisation who are authorised to do so.

It is particularly important that no unauthorised personnel engage in any activity that could be interpreted by the supplier as negotiation. Unauthorised activity could compromise the Council’s legal position in the event of a subsequent, related dispute.

Personnel should be wary of the dangers of unwittingly giving implicit agreement to a change in the contract. Any discussions or correspondence that could be perceived to be related to changes in service requirements should be prefaced by stating or noting that they are “without prejudice” to the contract.

Any changes that are agreed should be fully documented in accordance with the change procedures within the contract, and recorded as an addendum to the contract file.

33. Form of Contract

Purchase Contracts are normally utilised in addition to Purchase Orders for requirements over £50,000 in value. For specific requirements below £50,000 a contract may be appropriate where:

- Supply will extend beyond one year.
- Special conditions apply.
- The requirement is complex.
- There is significant risk associated with the purchase.

When a Purchase Contract is in place it must be used in preference to sourcing a requirement from another supplier.

All purchase contracts must:

- be in writing; and must specify the supplies, materials or services to be supplied, the price to be paid and must contain a statement as to the amount of any discount or other deductions, the period within which the contract is to be performed and such other conditions and terms as may be agreed between the parties; and
- include a clause prohibiting the contractor from transferring or assigning or sub-letting to any person any portion of the contract without the written permission of the Council signified by the appropriate Director; and
- must contain a clause empowering the Council to cancel the contract and to recover from the contractor the amount of any resulting loss if the contractor or any person employed by him/her or acting on his/her behalf whether or not to his/her knowledge shall have offered or given or agreed to give to any person any gift or consideration of any kind as an inducement or reward for taking or for not taking any action in relation to the contract or any other contract with the Council, or, in relation to any contract with the Council, shall have committed any offence under the Prevention of Corruption Acts 1889 to 1916, or shall have given any fee or reward the receipt of which is an offence under Section 117(2) of the Local Government Act 1972.

Every such contract must either be under seal and attested to by the Director of Resources, Governance & Growth or an officer authorised by him/her or signed by two officers of the Council designated by the appropriate Director. Where two signatures are required at least one must be that of a person not involved in the tendering or negotiation of the contract.

Directors must produce a list of those Officers whom they have authorised to sign contracts on their behalf and deposit that list with the Director of Resources, Governance & Growth.

Every contract whose estimated value exceeds £100,000 must where possible provide for the payment of liquidated damages by the contractor where he/she fails to complete the contract within the time specified.

The standard Great Yarmouth Borough Council Standard Contract & Purchase Conditions must be incorporated in all contracts entered into by the Council unless the parties agree to the contrary or it is considered inappropriate to do so by the appropriate Director in consultation with the Director of Resources, Governance & Growth.

34. Purchase order

The standard Purchase Order is generated by the Integra system and is normally utilised for all individual requirements and to call off requirements from existing Contracts. The Purchase Order will be completed with all the appropriate details of the purchase and the Standard Contract & Purchase Conditions are referred to on the supplier's copy of the Purchase Order.

The use of supplier-prepared agreements is not acceptable, as the whole contract will be placed on the supplier's terms and conditions, which are unlikely to be favourable to the Council.

35. Pricing

- a) In the case of long-term contracts (usually longer than one year) it may be necessary to include provision for inflationary and deflationary factors during the course of the contract. Due care must be taken when drafting this type of clause and when used must be approved by the Director of Resources, Governance & Growth.
- b) Only in the most exceptional circumstances may Purchase Contracts be placed on a cost-plus basis and then only on the specific authority of the Director of Resources, Governance & Growth. The cost-plus method of pricing is based on the supplier's price being made up of materials and labour costs plus a percentage mark-up. Cost-plus pricing provides no incentive for the supplier to perform effectively and places an unnecessary post-contract management burden on the Council.

Whenever it is used, the contract conditions must include a clause requiring the supplier to grant the Council open access to their books for cost audit. It is essential that the open book auditing is managed judiciously and recorded on the contract plan.

36. Transfer of undertakings (protection of employment) regulations 1981 (TUPE)

In relation to contracts where there is likelihood that employees may be transferred to a new employer the invitation to tender will state that the Council assumes that TUPE will apply unless evidence to the contrary is produced.

37. Living wage

In line with UK Government ambitions the Council supports the adoption of the 'Living Wage' and sees paying the Living Wage as good for business, good for the individual and good for society. Through procurement the Council will seek to source supplies, products and

services from local suppliers who pay their staff a living wage and suppliers should be encouraged to make this commitment, although it is important to note that under the EU Directives this cannot be enforced as a requirement.

38. Variations

All requests to suppliers to amend any contract or requirement must be made in writing and include authorisation at the same level as the original instruction, or at a higher level if the level of expenditure exceeds the original authorisation levels.

When the Purchase Order has been issued, any changes in the requirement must be notified to the supplier in writing by an amendment to the Purchase Order/Contract Variation.

39. Cancellation of purchase order/contract

All requests for cancellation must be made in writing to the contractor by the Budget Holder who initiated the contract. For complex contracts advice must be sought from the Director of Resources, Governance & Growth. Formal cancellation of the purchase order must be made in writing, ensuring Accounts Payable/Finance are informed. The details of any discussions and negotiation between the Budget Holder and the Supplier should be recorded with the reasons for cancellation and the outcomes of any discussion.

40. Termination due to supplier non performance

If the Supplier is not meeting their contractual obligations and negotiations fail to resolve the matter, the Purchase Order/Contract may need to be terminated.

The Budget Holder should review the consequences of the cancellation with regard to:

- The Budget Holder's needs.
- Project timing and cost.
- Overall relationship between the Council and the supplier.
- The Council's performance in the contract.
- Contractual implication from the supplier's point of view.
- Future and other outstanding business with that supplier.
- The possibility of negotiating damages or consequential losses.

41. Receipt of goods & services and payment

Payment cannot proceed until all supporting documentation has been completed. It is essential that receipt acknowledgements and invoices are returned promptly to the appropriate finance area by the Budget Holder after receipt of the goods or services.

Before an invoice is paid by the finance department the following checks need to be completed

to certify the specific invoice is passed for payment by confirming the following:

- The VAT invoice is an original or certified copy
- The goods and or services were received
- That the prices and all costs were agreed and invoiced correctly
- Applicable credits and or discounts have been applied
- The arithmetic calculations are correct

The finance department will process invoices promptly for payment. The Council is targeted by central government to achieve all payments to suppliers within 30 days of receiving an invoice.

42. Disposal of assets

Disposal and/or reallocation of assets need to be managed with the same diligence as the supply process. The Council has a duty of care regarding the disposal of equipment where environmental issues are appropriate.

Where Procurement is involved in disposal, records must be retained for the disposal of assets in a similar way as for purchase decisions.

Any items of stock (other than land) deemed obsolete or surplus to requirements must, where the expected loss on disposal is no more than £5,000, be sold or disposed of on the authorisation of the responsible Group Manager. Where the expected loss on disposal exceeds £5,000 the approval of the Director of Resources, Governance & Growth must be obtained.

Assets for disposal must be sold by public auction, except where better value for money is likely to be obtained by inviting quotations or tenders as determined by the Group Manager or Director of Resources, Governance & Growth. The method of disposing of surplus or obsolete stocks / stores or assets other than land must be determined as follows:

Total value	Method / Number of tenders or quotes
Up to £5,000	Public auction or minimum of two tenders / quotations, after authorisation by the Group Manager
£5,000.01 and above (Invitation to Tender)	Public auction or minimum of three written tenders, after authorisation by the Group Manager and Director of Resources,

Before an item is disposed of, consideration should be given as to whether there is a use for the item elsewhere within the Council. It is the responsibility of each Group Manager to establish that legal title rests with the Council prior to the disposal of any item. Disposal of land will in all cases require advice and guidance from the Group Manager: Property & Construction and Director of Resources, Governance & Growth, as set out in the Council's Financial Regulations.

43. Audit requirements

All Budget Holders must be aware that their procurement actions will be subject to Internal and External Audit examination, to ensure that procurement is carried out in a proper and business-like manner and in strict adherence to the Council's Contract Standing Orders.

Decisions on procurement actions must be recorded on file to provide an acceptable audit trail. This is particularly important in respect of:

- The Contract Plan.
- Negotiation and contract reviews.
- Justification of prices agreed other than by competitive tender.
- Full tender documents including a record of evaluation processes.

These are the most important examples; it is neither exhaustive nor exclusive. If a Budget Holder is ever in doubt about whether facts need to be recorded, it is advisable to err on the side of caution and record them.

It is equally important to note that recording of facts in these circumstances should not be excessive. Records should be sufficient to give a reasonably easily understood picture of events to someone reading them for the first time and to assist others to explain the reasoning behind decisions.

44. Archive records

It is a legal requirement for commercial records to be retained for inspection by various Government organisations, including Customs and Excise (VAT).

The retention period commences once the Tender, Purchase Order or Contract is closed; all "open" documents are retained indefinitely.

The records to be retained, the retention period and which section retains them are detailed below:

Document	Retained By	Retention Period
Tenders/Quotations	Budget Holder	7 Years
Purchase Orders	Finance Dept.	7 Years
Contracts	Budget Holder	7 Years
Suppliers' Invoices	Finance Dept.	7 Years

The records should be kept in a format that facilitates accessibility for future use.

45. Review of Contract Standing Orders

The Council Contract Standing Orders will be reviewed at least once per year by the CMG/EMT to ensure that they stay at the forefront of good procurement practice.

APPENDIX A GLOSSARY OF TERMS

The following terms are used throughout these Contract Standing Orders:

1. Approved Supplier – a supplier who has been assessed, has a proven record and is listed as approved for future business.
2. Budget Holder - the person, department or business unit that holds the financial budget, and has the authority to raise requests for goods and services.
3. Commitment - the act of confirming a contract with third party suppliers and should be made by a contract or purchase order.
4. Conditions of Purchase/Contract - the specific conditions under which the Council will enter into a contract or purchase order with a supplier.
5. Confirmation Order - an order which has been placed verbally, by facsimile transmission, or electronically communicated and subsequently confirmed by a formal purchase order marked “confirmation order”.
6. Contract - a legal agreement between the Council and external suppliers for the supply of goods and services. For the purpose of these Standing Orders this does not include contracts of employment for staff.
7. Contractor - an organisation that contracts with the Council to supply goods, services and works.
8. The Council - refers to the full Great Yarmouth Borough Council.
9. Procurement - the creation of legally binding agreements between the Council and third party organisations for the supply of goods, services and works.
10. Procurement Code of Ethics - the behaviour and conduct that governs the correct and professional manner in which to conduct commercial business with third party suppliers as published by the Chartered Institute of Purchasing & Supply.
11. Procurement Plan - the procurement plan is the record of the procurement strategy development for a particular purchase and provides a clear audit trail of the decision making process.
12. Proprietary Product - a product that has unique characteristics produced by one manufacturer. A proprietary product specification could exclude competitors from competing on equal terms. In consultancy the services of a named person or firm would be considered as a proprietary product.

13. Purchase Order - a serial numbered document created by the Integra system, raised by the Buyer on a specific supplier for the supply of goods, services or works. This document is a formal legal agreement with specific conditions for the supply of goods.
14. Purchase Order Amendment - a document communicating a change to the specified requirement, price or terms and conditions of the original Purchase Order. Like the original Purchase Order, this document is a formal legal agreement with specific conditions for the supply of goods.
15. Quotation - a statement of price, delivery and specification against the specific enquiry provided by a specific supplier.
16. Services - include the provision of consultancy, legal, cleaning, maintenance, agency staff and similar non-tangible requirements.
17. Specification - a clear statement of requirement for goods and/or services, normally detailed as a generic specification to enable competition and the delivery of value for money.
18. Supplier - an organisation that contracts with the Council to supply goods, services and works.
19. Tender - a formal offer from a supplier to supply specified goods, services or works at a stated cost or rate.
20. Tenderer - a supplier offering to buy or sell a product or service. This term applies prior to the formation of contract.
21. Value for money - a combination of criteria that include competitive price on a whole life basis, quality, reliability and timeliness. This is not necessarily the lowest priced offer.

APPENDIX B PROCUREMENT AUTHORITY THRESHOLDS

The following provides an outline to the value thresholds and corresponding outline procedures for requirements within those value bands.

Total Value of Expenditure	Purchase Procedure	Minimum Number of Responses	Decision Made By
< £5,000	<p>At least 2 verbal quotations required under £5000 and noted by the Budget Holder.</p> <p>Commitments must be confirmed with a Purchase Order raised by the Integra system.</p>	2	Budget Holder
£5,001-£15,000	<p>At least 3 suppliers must be invited to quote using the Council standard Request for Quotation Form and a minimum of two written responses are required.</p> <p>Contract Period 1 year maximum, automatic renewal or extension of contract is not permitted without referral to the Director of Resources, Governance & Growth.</p> <p>Negotiation should only be utilised where appropriate.</p> <p>Commitments must be confirmed immediately a Purchase Order.</p>	2	<p>Budget Holder & Group Manager.</p> <p>Refer to Director of Resources, Governance & Growth for contracts greater than 1 year duration, renewal or extension of contract.</p>

<p>£15,001- £50,000</p>	<p>At least 3 suppliers must be invited to quote and respond using the Council standard Request for Quotation Form.</p> <p>Maximum Contract Period 3 years using Standard Forms of Contract.</p> <p>Negotiation should only be utilised where appropriate.</p> <p>Commitments must be confirmed and Purchase Order and / or Contract raised.</p>	<p>3</p>	<p>Budget Holders with devolved authority.</p> <p>REFER to Group Manager and Director of Resources, Governance & Growth where restricted supply market exists, contract terms need to be modified or contract length is greater than 3 years.</p>
<p>£50,001- EU Threshold</p>	<p>A formal Invitation to Tender Process utilising competitive suppliers appropriate to market conditions.</p> <p>Negotiation should only be utilised where appropriate.</p> <p>Commitments must be confirmed with a Contract and Purchase Orders raised by the Integra system.</p>	<p>3</p>	<p>Group Manager with delegated procurement authority and the Budget Holder.</p>
<p>> EU Threshold</p>	<p>EU Tender Process. Utilising Clarification of final bids as appropriate.</p> <p>Commitments must be confirmed with a Contract and Purchase Orders raised by the Integra system.</p>	<p>4</p>	<p>Group Manager with delegated authority assisted by specialists from IT, Legal, Finance and Human Resources as appropriate to the requirement.</p>

APPENDIX C EXEMPTION / WAIVER FORM

Request for exemption from the requirements of Contract Standing Orders

Contract Name / Description:
Contract Sum: £
Anticipated Date of Commencement of Contract:
Anticipated Date of Completion of Contract:
Contract Supervisor:
Brief Details of Contract:
Reason(s) for being exempt from the requirements of Contract Standing Orders (i.e. Details of which paragraph(s) in Standing Order apply):
Approved: Group Manager.....Date:
Approved: Director of Resources, Governance & Growth.....Date:

OFFICER EMPLOYMENT PROCEDURE RULES

1. RECRUITMENT AND APPOINTMENT

(a) Declarations

- (i) The Council will draw up a statement requiring any candidate for appointment as an Officer to state in writing whether they are the parent, grandparent, partner, child, stepchild, adopted child, grandchild, brother, sister, uncle, aunt, nephew or niece of an existing Councillor or Officer of the Council; or of the partner of such persons.
- (ii) No candidate so related to a Councillor or Officer will be appointed without the authority of the Chief Executive or an Officer nominated by him/her.

(b) Seeking support for appointment

- (i) Subject to paragraph (iii), the Council will disqualify any applicant who directly or indirectly seeks the support of any Councillor for any appointment with the Council. A statement along these lines will be included in any recruitment information.
- (ii) Subject to paragraph (iii), no Councillor or Officer will seek support for any person for any appointment with the Council.
- (iii) Nothing in paragraphs (i) and (ii) above will preclude a Councillor or the Mayor from giving a written reference for a candidate for submission with an application for appointment.

2. RECRUITMENT OF HEAD OF PAID SERVICE

Where the Council proposes to appoint a Head of Paid Service and it is not proposed that the appointment be made exclusively from among their existing Officers, the Council will:

- (a) Draw up a statement specifying the duties of the post together with a specification of the qualifications or qualities sought in the person to be appointed;
- (b) Make arrangements for the post to be advertised in such a way as is likely to bring it to the attention of persons who are qualified to apply for it; and
- (c) Make arrangements for a copy of the documents mentioned in paragraph (a) to be sent to any person on request.

3. APPOINTMENT OF HEAD OF PAID SERVICE

- (a) The full Council will approve the appointment of the Head of Paid Service following the recommendation of such an appointment by a Committee or Sub-Committee of the Council. .

- (b) The full Council may only make or approve the appointment of the Head of Paid Service where no well-founded objection has been made by any councillor

4. **APPOINTMENT OF DIRECTORS**

- (a) A Committee or Sub-Committee of the Council will appoint the Directors.
- (b) An offer of employment as Director shall only be made where no well-founded objection from any Member of the council.

5. **OTHER APPOINTMENTS**

- (a) **Officers below Director.** Appointment of all Officers below Director (other than assistants to political groups and an assistant to the Elected Mayor) is the responsibility of the Head of Paid Service or his/her nominee, and may not be made by Councillors.
- (b) **Assistants to political groups.** Appointment of an assistant to a political group shall be made in accordance with the wishes of that political group.

6. **DISCIPLINARY ACTION**

- (a) **Suspension.** The Head of Paid Service, Monitoring Officer and Chief Finance Officer may be suspended whilst an investigation takes place into alleged misconduct. That suspension will be on full pay and last no longer than two months.
- (b) **Independent person.** No other disciplinary action may be taken in respect of any of those Officers except in accordance with a recommendation in a report made by a designated independent person.
- (c) Councillors will not be involved in the disciplinary action against any Officer below Director except where such involvement is necessary for any investigation or inquiry into alleged misconduct, though the Council's disciplinary, capability and related procedures, as adopted from time to time may allow a right of appeal to Members in respect of disciplinary action.

7. **DISMISSAL**

Councillors will not be involved in the dismissal of any Officer below Director except where such involvement is necessary for any investigation or inquiry into alleged misconduct, though the Council's disciplinary, capability and related procedures, as adopted from time to time may allow a right of appeal to Members in respect of dismissals.

PART 5

MEMBERS' AND OFFICERS' CODES OF CONDUCT

Great Yarmouth Borough Council Members' Code of Conduct

Introduction to the Code

This Code of Conduct is a key part of the Authority's discharge of its statutory duty to promote and maintain high standards of conduct by its members and co-opted members. It is very much focused upon the principles of conduct in public life of selflessness, integrity, objectivity, accountability, openness, honesty, and leadership and it is the intention of the Authority that the Code be used exclusively in that context and not for any other purpose. It sets an objective, non political and high standard whose purpose is to remind members of the Authority of the behaviour expected of them in public life and to set out clearly the key principles against which their conduct will be measured.

The Code also contains provisions for registration and declaration of interests the breach of which will now attract potential criminal sanctions.

The Council will establish a Standards Committee to hear breaches of the Code and decide on sanctions against members found to be in default. Working closely with the Council's Monitoring Officer and Independent Person the Standards Committee will oversee a straightforward and robust regime dealing only with substantial ethics and standards issues and filtering out the inconsequential, trivial and vexatious. The Code will deal in broad common sense principles and neither it nor the supporting arrangements are intended to be over-technical or over-procedural. To return to the wording of the statute the Code is the Authority's public statement on the promotion and maintenance of high standards of conduct in public life.

Every member and co-opted member of Great Yarmouth Borough Council must sign an undertaking to observe the Code in the terms set out below.

The Code

As a member or co-opted member of Great Yarmouth Borough Council I have a responsibility to represent the community and work constructively with our staff and partner organisations to secure better social, economic and environmental outcomes for all.

In accordance with the Localism Act provisions, when acting in this capacity I am committed to behaving in a manner that is consistent with the following principles to achieve best value for our residents and maintain public confidence in this authority.

SELFLESSNESS: Holders of public office should act solely in terms of the public interest. They should not do so in order to gain financial or other material benefits for themselves, their family, or their friends.

INTEGRITY: Holders of public office should not place themselves under any financial or other obligation to outside individuals or organisations that might seek to influence them in the performance of their official duties.

OBJECTIVITY: In carrying out public business, including making public appointments, awarding contracts, or recommending individuals for rewards and benefits, holders of public office should make choices on merit.

ACCOUNTABILITY: Holders of public office are accountable for their decisions and actions to the public and must submit themselves to whatever scrutiny is appropriate to their office.

OPENNESS: Holders of public office should be as open as possible about all the decisions and actions that they take. They should give reasons for their decisions and restrict information only when the wider public interest clearly demands.

HONESTY: Holders of public office have a duty to declare any private interests relating to their public duties and to take steps to resolve any conflicts arising in a way that protects the public interest.

LEADERSHIP: Holders of public office should promote and support these principles by leadership and example.

As a Member of Great Yarmouth Borough Council my conduct will in particular address the statutory principles of the Code by:

- Championing the needs of residents - the whole community and in a special way my constituents, including those who did not vote for me - and putting their interests first.
- Dealing with representations or enquiries from residents, members of our communities and visitors fairly, appropriately and impartially.
- Not allowing other pressures, including the financial interests of myself or others connected to me, to deter me from pursuing constituents' casework, the interests of Great Yarmouth nor the good governance of the authority in a proper manner.
- Exercising independent judgement and not compromising my position by placing myself under obligations to outside individuals or organisations who might seek to influence the way I perform my duties as a member/co-opted member of this authority.
- Listening to the interests of all parties, including relevant advice from statutory and other professional officers, taking all relevant information into

consideration, remaining objective and making decisions on merit.

- Being accountable for my decisions and co-operating when scrutinised internally and externally, including by local residents.
- Contributing to making this authority's decision-making processes as open and transparent as possible to enable residents to understand the reasoning behind those decisions and to be informed when holding me and other members to account but restricting access to information when the wider public interest or the law requires it
- Behaving in accordance with all our legal obligations, alongside any requirements contained within this authority's policies, protocols and procedures, including on the use of the Authority's resources.
- Valuing my colleagues and staff and engaging with them in an appropriate manner and one that underpins the mutual respect between us that is essential to good local government.
- Always treating people with respect, including the organisations and public I engage with and those I work alongside.
- Providing leadership through behaving in accordance with these principles when championing the interests of the community with other organisations as well as within this authority.

1. Registration and Disclosure of Disclosable Pecuniary Interests

- 1.1 will notify the Monitoring Officer within 28 days of taking office of any Disclosable Pecuniary Interests by completing the attached Register form.
- 1.2 If I subsequently become aware of any new Disclosable Pecuniary Interest I will provide details to the Monitoring Officer as soon as possible.
- 1.3 If I am present at a council or committee meeting and I have a Disclosable Pecuniary Interest in any matter to be considered I will declare that I have a Disclosable Pecuniary Interest (and the reasons why) and leave the room while the matter is considered,

2. Disclosure of personal interests

- 2.1 I have a personal interest in any matter being considered at a council or committee meeting when it is not a Disclosable Pecuniary Interest but a decision on it is likely to affect

2.1.1 my well being or financial position

- 2.1.2 or that of my family or close friends
 - 2.1.3 or that of a club or society in which I have a management role

 - 2.1.4 or that of another public body of which I am a member to a greater extent than others in my ward.
- 2.2 I will declare a personal interest (and the reasons for it) at the meeting in question but before the matter is discussed. Having declared a personal interest I can speak and vote on the matter.
- 2.3 I acknowledge that if I am sitting on a Licensing or Development Control Committee I should not speak or vote on an application if I could be considered to have made up my mind in advance, or to be biased in any way.

GREAT YARMOUTH BOROUGH COUNCIL

CODE OF CONDUCT

For the purpose of this Procedure, the term 'Senior Manager' shall encompass the Chief Executive, officers subject to the Conditions of Service for Chief Officers of Local Authorities and Service Managers.

1. Introduction

- 1.1 The public is entitled to expect the highest standards of conduct from all Council employees. This Code outlines existing laws and regulations and provides guidance to assist the Council and its employees in their day-to-day work.
- 1.2 The aim of this Code is to lay down guidelines for employees which will help maintain and improve standards and protect them from misunderstanding or criticism.
- 1.3 The Code applies to all employees, although inevitably some of the issues covered will affect senior employees more than it will others. Those employees who are members of a professional body will be bound both by their professional codes of conduct and the Council's. If any employee experiences any conflict between the Council's and their profession's codes of conduct, they are to make their Senior Manager aware immediately.
- 1.4 A breach of the Code may give rise to disciplinary action. A breach which is so serious as to undermine public confidence in the Borough Council could be held to be gross misconduct.

2. Standards

- 2.1 The public always demands the highest standards of conduct from the employees of Great Yarmouth Borough Council. The public's confidence in the integrity of the Council would be damaged if the actions of any employee allowed suspicion to arise that they would be influenced in any way by improper motives.

Standards of personal behaviour.

- 2.2 Employees are expected to give the highest possible standard of service to the public, and where it is part of their duties, to provide appropriate advice to councillors and fellow employees with impartiality. Although the Committee on Standards in Public Life established its seven principles primarily with elected members in mind, they apply equally to employees in the public service. All staff are therefore expected to conduct themselves in accordance with those principles, which are:

Selflessness: Holders of public office should take decisions solely in terms of the public interest. They should not do so in order to gain financial or other material benefits for themselves, their family, or their friends.

Integrity: Holders of public office should not place themselves under any financial or other obligation to outside individuals or organisations that might influence them in the performance of their official duties.

Objectivity: In carrying out public business, including making public appointments, awarding contracts, or recommending individuals for rewards and benefits, holders of public office should make choices on merit.

Accountability: Holders of public office are accountable for their decisions and actions to the public and must submit themselves to whatever scrutiny is appropriate to their office.

Openness: Holders of public office should be as open as possible about all the decisions and actions that they take. They should give reasons for their decisions and restrict information only when the wider public interest clearly demands.

Honesty: Holders of public office have a duty to declare any private interests relating to their public duties and to take steps to resolve any conflicts arising in a way that protects the public interest.

Leadership: Holders of public office should promote and support these principles by leadership and example.

- 2.3 Furthermore employees will treat all members of the local community, customers and other employees with fairness and equality.
- 2.4 Employees must ensure that they use public funds entrusted to them in a responsible and lawful manner. They should strive, within the policies of the Council, to ensure value for money to the local community and to avoid legal challenge to the Council.
- 2.5 All employees must be clear about their contractual obligations to the Council and shall not take outside employment which conflicts with the Council's interests, or which is of such a nature as to raise concerns that the employee's work for the Council may be adversely affected.

All employees must accordingly obtain their Senior Manager's permission before accepting any outside employment. Where necessary authority for permission may be required from Council rather than the Senior Manager. This information will be recorded on the employee's personal file.

- 2.6 Employees must take reasonable care for their health and safety and this duty extends to other people who may be affected by their actions or omissions (section 77 - Corporate Manual).

Standards of services to the public

- 2.7 Employees must always remember their responsibilities to the community and ensure courteous, knowledgeable, timely and impartial service delivery to all groups and individuals within that community.
- 2.8 Great Yarmouth Borough Council endeavours to deliver a high standard of services to the public. Employees are therefore expected, without fear of recrimination, to report any deficiency in the provision of services to the public.
- 2.9 In addition, the Council has an Anti Fraud and Corruption Policy and recognises its employees as an important element in its fight against fraud and corruption. Employees are therefore positively encouraged to raise any concerns that they may have. These may relate to the internal activities of the Council, or to its dealings with suppliers or customers.
- 2.10 These concerns will normally be made to an immediate Line Manager. If the circumstances are such as to make this inappropriate, employees should discuss such matters with their Senior Manager or in exceptional circumstances with an independent officer such the Chief Executive or Monitoring Officer.

If employees feel unable to raise their concerns through any of the internal routes, then they may raise them through 'Public Concern at Work' (telephone number 0171 4046609), a registered charity whose services are free and strictly confidential.

3. Disclosure of information

- 3.1 The law requires that certain types of information must be made available to councillors, auditors, government departments and the public. This is largely governed by the Local Government (Access to Information) Act 1985. The Council itself however, might decide to make available other types of information.
- 3.2 Employees must be aware of the restrictions imposed upon them by the Data Protection Act 1984. Each employee is responsible for the security of personal data that they may use in the course of their job. Such data must not be disclosed to any unauthorised person, even inadvertently, and includes data on a Visual Display Unit screen or on hard copy tabulations.

Management must therefore keep employees informed as to which information is open and which is not, and adequately trained in understanding the restrictions of the Data Protection Act. In cases of

doubt, employees should withhold information and consult the Data Protection Officer.

- 3.3 Employees must not use any information obtained in the course of their employment for personal gain or benefit, nor shall they pass it on to others who might use it in such a way. This is especially relevant to employees who are privy to confidential information on tenders or costs for either internal or external contractors.
- 3.4 Any particular information received by an employee from a councillor which is personal to that councillor and is not the property of the Council must not be divulged by the employee without the prior approval of that councillor, except where disclosure is required or sanctioned by the law. If an employee has concerns about the propriety of withholding any such information received, they can discuss the matter in confidence with the Monitoring Officer.
- 3.5 On occasions an elected member will make an enquiry about a specific item of Council business. Elected members are entitled to information which is necessary to enable them to carry out their duties as councillors. Employees are expected to disclose such information, usually in writing and dependant upon its sensitivity, to send a copy of that information to the relevant committee chairman and shadow chairman (the latter only if the enquiry came from an opposition member). If employees have any doubts as to whether certain pieces of information should be disclosed they are to consult either their Line Manager or the Monitoring Officer.
- 3.6 Only certain officers are authorised to respond to enquiries from the media.

4. **Political neutrality**

- 4.1 Employees serve the Council as a whole. They must follow every lawful decision and policy of the Council and must not allow their personal or political opinions to interfere with their work. They must therefore serve and respect the rights of *all* councillors equally, irrespective of the member's political affiliation.
- 4.2 Senior Managers may, on occasions, be requested to attend political group meetings to give information. Their conduct at such meetings must not compromise their political neutrality. An employee always has the right, without fear of recrimination, to decline to address a political group.
- 4.3 Some people will be in posts which restricts their political activity outside of their employment at the Council. All affected persons shall be mindful of the strictures of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989, Local Government Officers (Political Restriction) Regulations 1990 and Local Government (Politically Restricted Posts) (No 2) Regulations 1990.

5 Relationships

- 5.1 No special favour may be shown to friends, partners, relatives or to current or former employees. Employees must therefore disclose *all* relevant relationships to their Senior Manager, whether of a business or private nature, which might have the potential to bring about a conflict with the Council's interests. Such relationships will include those with lessees, benefit claimants and grant applicants for example. If employees have doubts over the relevance of a particular relationship, they are advised to disclose it anyway. This information will be recorded in a Register of Relationships, to be held by the Monitoring Officer.
- 5.2 Employees must declare to the Chief Executive and Monitoring Officer membership of any organisation which is: not open to the public without formal membership, has a commitment of allegiance and which has secrecy about its rules, membership or conduct. This information will be recorded in a Register of Relationships, to be held by the Monitoring Officer

Relationships with councillors

- 5.3 Mutual respect between employees and councillors is essential to good local government. Close personal familiarity between employees and individual councillors can prove embarrassing to other employees and councillors and should be avoided. In general, employees and councillors should always consider the way others may view the potential conflicts arising from social connections, especially concerning confidentiality and bias.

Councillors should always be addressed respectfully.

Relationships with contractors

- 5.4 Orders and contracts must be awarded on merit, by fair competition in accordance with Council Standing Orders. Employees must disclose all relationships with current or potential contractors.

Employees involved in the tendering process and dealing with contractors must be clearly aware of the separation of client and contractor roles within the Council. Senior employees who have both a client and contractor responsibility must be aware of the need for accountability and openness.

- 5.5 If there is the slightest possibility of a conflict between an employee's duties to the Council and their relationship with the contractor, lessee, or benefit claimant etc., then the Senior Manager must report that relationship to the appropriate committee. In cases where the employee concerned is a Senior Manager, then the Chief Executive or Monitoring Officer must be informed and will report that relationship to the committee.

Relationships with potential employees

- 5.6 Employees involved in appointments must ensure that these are made on the basis of merit. It would be unlawful for an employee to make an appointment which was based on anything other than the ability of the candidate to undertake the duties of the post. Employees making appointments must be aware of equal opportunities legislation.
- 5.7 In order to avoid any possible accusation of bias, employees must not be involved in any appointment where they are related to an applicant, or be familiar with him or her outside work, neither must they be involved in decisions relating to discipline, promotion or pay adjustments for any other employee to whom they are related.

6. Gifts, hospitality and sponsorship

- 6.1 S117(2) of the Local Government act 1972 states that an employee shall not accept any fee or reward whatsoever other than their proper remuneration.
- 6.2 Employees must be aware that corruption is a serious criminal offence. The law states that if an allegation is made it is for the employee to demonstrate that any such gifts have *not* been corruptly obtained. Corruption is defined as 'the offering, giving, soliciting or acceptance of an inducement or reward which may influence the action of any person' (from 'Protecting the Public Purse'- Audit Commission - 1993).

Gifts

- 6.3 Employees must not accept personal gifts or special discounts for themselves or their families from contractors, customers or outside suppliers, except for items of token value, i.e. less than £10, such as pens, diaries, calendars etc, and then if only for use in the course of their Council duties.
- 6.4 If gifts offered are of value and cannot be refused without causing offence, the recipients must hand them over to the Chief Executive's Secretary, after noting them in a Register of Gifts, Hospitality and Sponsorship held by their Senior Manager.

Hospitality

- 6.5 Employees and their families must only accept offers of hospitality if there is a genuine need to impart information or represent the Council in the community. Offers to attend purely social or sporting functions must only be accepted when these are part of the life of the community, or

where the Council should be seen to be represented. All such invitations must be reported to the Senior Manager who will sanction attendance and irrespective of whether the invitation is accepted or not, it must be recorded in a Register of Gifts, Hospitality and Sponsorship.

- 6.6 When attending authorised hospitality, employees shall give only relevant and factual answers and must be particularly sensitive as to the timing of the event in relation to decisions which the Council may be taking which could affect those providing the hospitality.
- 6.7 Where visits to inspect equipment etc are required, employees should ensure that the Council meets the cost of such visits to avoid jeopardising the integrity of subsequent purchasing decisions. This rule should be applied unless there is a specific decision of the Council to the contrary.
- 6.8 When hospitality has to be declined, the person who made the offer should be courteously, but firmly informed of the procedures and standards operating within the Council.

Sponsorship

- 6.9 Where an outside organisation wishes to sponsor a Council activity, the basic conventions concerning acceptance of gifts or hospitality apply. In the first instance the employee must inform their Senior Manager who will give guidance as to whether the Council will accept the offer. Particular care however, must be taken when dealing with contractors, potential contractors and tenants. Irrespective of whether the offer is accepted or not, it must be recorded in a Register of Gifts, Hospitality and Sponsorship.
- 6.10 Where the Council wishes to sponsor an event or service, neither an employee nor any partner, spouse or relative must benefit from such sponsorship in a direct way without there being full disclosure to their Senior Manager and the fact being noted in the Register of Gifts, Hospitality and Sponsorship.

Similarly, where the Council through sponsorship, grant aid, financial or other means gives support in the community, employees must ensure that impartial advice is given and that there is no conflict of interest involved.

PART 6

MEMBERS' ALLOWANCES SCHEME

GREAT YARMOUTH BOROUGH COUNCIL

SCHEME OF MEMBERS' ALLOWANCES 2013/14

SPECIAL RESPONSIBILITY ALLOWANCES			£
Leader		1	9,364
Committee Members		5	5,201
Shadow Committee Members		5	894
Committee Support Members		5	894
Shadow Leader		1	3,943
Mayor (Chairman of Council)		1	1,788
Deputy Mayor		1	717
Scrutiny Committee			
	Chairman	1	3,579
	Vice-Chairman	1	717
Audit and Risk Committee			
	Chairman	1	3,579
	Vice-Chairman	1	717
Regulatory Committees			
- Housing Appeals	Chairman	1	894
- Licensing	Chairman	1	1,876
- Appeals	Chairman	1	271
Development Control Committee			
	Chairman	1	3,579
	Vice-Chairman	1	717
BASIC ALLOWANCES			
All Members		39	3,579

PART 7

MANAGEMENT STRUCTURE

GREAT YARMOUTH BOROUGH COUNCIL

SECTION B

PROTOCOL ON MEMBER/OFFICER RELATIONS

PROTOCOL FOR MEMBER/OFFICER RELATIONS

1. GENERAL

- 1.1 The aim of the protocol is to guide Member/Officer relations in order to provide an open and honest working ethos which ensures the delivery of the Council's statutory and other proper functions in a transparent and accountable fashion.
- 1.2 Given the variety and complexity of such relations, this protocol does not seek to be either prescriptive or comprehensive. It seeks simply to offer guidance on some of the issues which most commonly arise. It is hoped however that the approach which it adopts to these issues will serve as a guide to dealing with other issues.
- 1.3 This Protocol reflects good practice and is to a large extent no more than a written statement of current practice and convention. In some respects, however, it seeks to promote greater clarity and certainty.

2. THE PRINCIPLES UNDERLYING MEMBER/OFFICER RELATIONS

- Both Councillors and Officers are servants of the public and are indispensable to one another.
- Councillors are responsible to the electorate and serve only as long as their term of office lasts.
- Officers are responsible to the Council and their job is to provide advice to Councillors and the Council and to undertake the Council's work as directed by the Council's Committees.
- Both Councillors and Officers are bound by their respective Codes of Conduct which seek to enhance and maintain the integrity of local government generally by ensuring that both groups adopt the highest standards of personal conduct.
- Mutual respect as well as high standards of courtesy are essential to effective relations, neither Officers nor Members should seek to take unfair advantage of their respective positions.
- Close personal familiarity between individual Councillors and Officers can damage the above relationship and prove embarrassing to other Councillors and Officers.

3. ROLES OF MEMBERS

- To effectively represent the interests of their ward and of their individual constituents.
- To respond to enquiries and representation from all their constituents both fairly and impartially.
- To represent their communities and ensure that their communities' views are brought into the Council's decision making process.

- Collectively through the Council to:-
 - adopt and review the Constitution
 - adopt and review the authority's Code of Conduct
 - agree the Policy Framework and Budget
 - make decisions on matters which are not the responsibility of the Committee and which have not been delegated to committees or officers
 - make appointments to committees
 - make appointments to outside bodies
 - appoint the authority's Chief Executive
- To serve as Members on Committees and Working Groups.
- To always maintain the highest standards of conduct and ethics.
- To scrutinise decisions and policies as Members of the Scrutiny Committee (excluding Committee Members).
- Be available to represent the Council on other bodies including external organisations.

4. ROLES OF OFFICERS

- Responsible for day to day managerial and operational decisions.
- Providing support to all Councillors in the undertaking of their various roles.
- Responsible for ensuring the delivery of the authority's policies and services within the Policy Framework and Budget set by Council.
- Maintaining the principle of political neutrality and service to the whole Council.
- Providing the internal audit service and liaison with external audit.
- Through the post of Chief Executive (Head of Paid Service):-
 - providing overall corporate management and operational responsibility (including overall management responsibility for all staff)
 - providing professional advice to all parties in the decision making process
 - ensuring that a system of record keeping for all of the authority's decisions is maintained
 - representing the authority on partnership and external bodies
- Through the post of Monitoring Officer:-
 - maintaining and promoting high standards of conduct
 - providing advice on vices issues, maladministration, financial impropriety, probity and policy framework and budget issues
 - ensuring that Committee decisions and the reasons and other relevant papers are made publically available
 - ensuring lawfulness and fairness of decision making
 - supporting the Standards Committee by conducting investigations into matters referred by official Standards Officers and receiving and acting upon reports by those officers and on decisions of case tribunals

- maintaining and up-to-date version of the Council's Constitution and ensuring it is widely available for consultation
- Through the Chief Finance Officer:-
 - ensuring the lawfulness and financial prudence of decision making
 - administering the Council's financial affairs
 - providing financial advice to aid the corporate management of the Council
 - advising all Councillors on the scope of powers and authority to take decisions, maladministration, financial impropriety, probity, budget and policy framework issues and providing general support and advice to Councillors and Officers in their respective roles
 - Providing financial information to the media, members of the public and the community.

5. **RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN MAYOR AND OFFICERS**

- (a) The Mayor will act as the independent Chairman of Council.
- (b) He/she is precluded from membership of, Standards Committee, and Regulatory Committees.
- (c) He/she will be responsible for interpreting the Constitution and ensuring that its provisions are upheld.
- (d) To undertake that role he/she will need to maintain a close working relationship with the Officers to obtain necessary advice and guidance.
- (e) At all times, however, the Mayor should remain impartial and should not allow him/herself to be influenced by Officers to the extent that this could result in a breach of the Constitution.

6.

7. **OFFICER RELATIONSHIPS WITH PARTY GROUPS**

- (a) Whilst the existence of party groups within local government is acknowledged, they do not form part of the system for which Council support is provided or financed.
- (b) Members therefore will not receive any support on purely party matters, such support being restricted to Council business only. In the event of Officers attending a group meeting to discuss an issue it is important that the business is divided in such a way to ensure that the Officer can leave once the item(s) of Council business have been discussed. Officers attending such meetings should also be advised in advance if the meeting will involve Members who would not be bound by this protocol or any other approved Code of Conduct.

- (c) Officers will respect party confidentiality but will be bound by their statutory obligations and so should not be placed in any position of potential conflict by party groups.
- (d) Support to party groups is only proper and legal if it applies to Council matters, any use for private or party benefit is unlawful.
- (e) Whilst party group meetings are part of the preliminaries to Council decision making they are not able to make decisions on behalf of the Council. Any conclusions reached at such meetings therefore are not Council decisions and Members must not instruct Officers to implement such a decision until that decision has been properly taken in accordance with Article 3 of the Constitution.
- (f) The provision of information and advice to a party group meeting on a matter of Council business cannot act as a substitute for that information and advice being provided to the relevant Council meeting when the matter is considered.
- (g) Any particular cases of difficulty or uncertainty in this area of Officer's advice to party groups should be raised with the Chief Executive who will discuss them with the party leaders.
- (h) The only basis on which the Council can legally provide support services (eg stationery, typing, printing, photocopying etc) to Members is to assist them in undertaking their role as Councillors. Such support services must therefore only be used on Council business, they must never be used in connection with party political or campaigning activity or for private purposes.

8. MEMBERS IN THEIR WARD ROLES AND OFFICERS

- 8.1 Whenever a public meeting is organised by the Council to consider a local issue, all Members representing the Ward or Wards affected should, as a matter of course, be invited to attend the meeting. Similarly, whenever the Council undertakes any form of consultation on a local issue, the Ward Members should be notified.
- 8.2 Ward Members will be kept informed of correspondence between the Council and local MP that concern their constituents. This will be done on a confidential basis. (This will be discussed with the local MP before being implemented).

9. MEMBERS' ACCESS TO INFORMATION, COUNCIL DOCUMENTS AND OFFICER ADVICE

- 9.1 Members will need in the discharge of their duties to access information from Officers. This will usually be most efficiently achieved through the Chief Executive or Director who are able to provide an overview or direct the Member to the most appropriate Officer. For individual cases, Members may approach Case Officers, but more junior staff are entitled to refer the Member to the Chief Executive, Director or Group Manager.
- 9.2 Members who wish to obtain information from Officers should request it as early as possible, recognising that Officers may require reasonable time to collate or research the information. Members will state any deadline for the provision of information.

This also applies where a Member wishes to obtain information to supplement an Officer report after the agenda for a meeting has been issued.

- 9.3 Officers will make every reasonable effort to provide Members with accurate factual information and professional advice in a timely manner, unless this would exceed the Officer's authority or there are lawful reasons to prevent disclosure of the information.
- 9.4 Members have a statutory right to inspect any Council document, which contains material relating to any business, which is to be transacted at a Council, Committee or Sub-Committee meeting. This right applies irrespective of whether the Member is a Member of the Committee or Sub-Committee concerned and extends not only to reports which are to be submitted to the meeting but also to any relevant background papers. This right does not however apply to documents relating to items containing information which is exempt from publication. The items in question are those which contain exempt information relating to employees, occupiers of Council property, applicants for grants and other services, contract and industrial relations negotiations, advice from Counsel and criminal investigations. Correspondence held by the Monitoring Officer in relation to his duties is similarly exempt, unless released by him in the interests of furthering any enquiry.
- 9.5 The common law right of Members is much broader and is based on the principle that any Member has a prima facie right to inspect Council documents so far as his/her access to the documents is reasonably necessary to enable the Member to perform properly his/her duties as a Member of the Council. This principle is commonly referred to as the "need to know" principle, and will be determined in the first instance by the particular Director whose service holds the document in question. In the event of dispute, the question will first be referred to the Chief Executive for determination, then to the Monitoring Officer if the matter is still unresolved and finally to the Standards Committee in the event that the dispute is still unable to be resolved.
- 9.6 A Member who requests to inspect documents which contain personal information about third parties will normally be expected to justify their request in specific terms.
- 9.5 A Member of one party group will not have a "need to know", and therefore does not have a right to inspect, any document which forms part of the internal workings of another party group and is in the possession of the Council or an individual Officer.
- 9.8 More detailed advice concerning Member's rights to inspect Council documents may be obtained from the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth.
- 9.9 Any Council information is provided to a Member on the basis that it must only be used by the Member in connection with the proper performance of the Member's duties as a Member of the Council. This forms part of the Council's data protection requirements. This point is emphasised in paragraph 26 of the National Code of Local Government Conduct.

10. **CORRESPONDENCE**

- 10.1 Correspondence between an individual Member and an Officer should not normally be copied by the Officer to any other Member. Where it is necessary in the opinion of the Officer, the Member will be informed.

10.2 Members are entitled to send out correspondence in their own names, but should check with Officers if they are concerned that they may be committing the Council to any form of action, or create obligations or give instructions on behalf of the Council. Officers will mention the involvement of a Member if that Member has raised the matter (eg as part of their casework) or has asked the Officer to write to a constituent.

11. **PRESS RELEASES**

11.1 This Council will abide by the provisions of the DETR Local Authority Publicity Code, April 2001.

11.2 Information on Council services will be produced in collaboration with the Customer Services Department and will be impartial, reflecting Council approved policy.

11.3 Press releases will be written and issued by the relevant Director following approval of the Chief Executive and/or Committee chair where appropriate.

11.4 Publicity will not be party political and will report on and reflect Council policy.

11.5 Media requesting political comments will be referred to the party group Leader, or Committee Chairmen, as appropriate.

11.6 As resources permit we will make public information provided by the Council available on the web-site accessible to Members and residents.

GREAT YARMOUTH BOROUGH COUNCIL

SECTION C

CODE OF CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

GREAT YARMOUTH BOROUGH COUNCIL

CODE OF CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

Contents

Core Principle 1 *Focussing on the purpose of the Council and outcomes for the community and creating and implementing a vision for the local area*

Core Principle 2 *Members and officers working together to achieve a common purpose with clearly defined functions and roles*

Core Principle 3 *Promoting values for the authority and demonstrating the values of good governance through upholding high standards of conduct and behaviour*

Core Principle 4 *Taking informed and transparent decisions which are subject to effective scrutiny and managing risk*

Core Principle 5 *Developing the capacity and capability of members and officers to be effective*

Core Principle 6 *Engaging with local people and other stakeholders to ensure robust public accountability*

GREAT YARMOUTH BOROUGH COUNCIL

CODE OF CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

INTRODUCTION

***“Governance is about how local government bodies ensure that they are doing the right things, in the right way for the right people, in a timely, inclusive, open, honest and accountable manner.*”**

It comprises the systems and processes, and cultures and values, by which local government bodies are directed and controlled and through which they account to, engage with and where appropriate, lead their communities”

Delivering Good Governance in Local Authorities (CIPFA/SOLACE 2007)

The CIPFA/SOLACE guidance “Delivering Good Governance in Local Authorities” identified six Core Principles against which local authorities should review their existing corporate governance arrangements and develop and maintain adopt a local code of governance. These principles are;

- Focussing on the purpose of the Council and outcomes for the community and creating and implementing a vision for the local area***
- Members and officers working together to achieve a common purpose with clearly defined functions and roles***
- Promoting values for the authority and demonstrating the values of good governance through upholding high standards of conduct and behaviour***
- Taking informed and transparent decisions which are subject to effective scrutiny and managing risk***
- Developing the capacity and capability of members and officers to be effective***
- Engaging with local people and other stakeholders to ensure robust public accountability***

The Code of Governance has been prepared in accordance with the Guidance and will be reviewed by the Audit and Risk Committees on an annual basis.

Additionally authorities are required to prepare and publish an annual governance statement in accordance with this framework under Regulation 4(2) of the Accounts and Audit (Amendment) (England) Regulations 2006.

The Annual Governance Statement is a key corporate document. The Chief Executive and the Leader of the Council have joint responsibility as signatories for its accuracy and completeness.

GREAT YARMOUTH BOROUGH COUNCIL: CODE OF CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

Core Principle 1 - Focussing on the purpose of the Council and outcomes for the community and creating and implementing a vision for the local area

Our aims in relation to focussing on the purpose of the Council and outcomes for the community and creating and implementing a vision for the local area are to;

1.1 Exercise strategic leadership by developing and clearly communicating the authority's purpose, vision and its intended outcome for citizens and service users

1.2 Ensure users receive a high quality service whether directly, or in partnership, or by commissioning

1.3 Ensure that the authority makes best use of resources and that tax payers and service users receive excellent value for money

In order to achieve our aims we will:	Source documents	Further work ongoing
1.1.1 Develop and promote the Council's purpose and vision	Medium Term Financial Strategy Corporate Plan	Corporate Plan being updated
1.1.2 Review on a regular basis the Council's vision for the local area and its impact on the authority's governance arrangements	Medium Term Financial Strategy Code of Corporate Governance Corporate Plan	Corporate Plan being updated
1.1.3 Ensure that partnerships are underpinned by a common vision of their work that is understood and agreed by all parties	Constitution	
1.1.4 Publish an annual report on a timely basis to communicate the authority's activities and achievements, its financial position and performance	Annual Financial Statements	
1.2.1 Decide how the quality of service for users is to be measured and make sure that the information needed to review service quality effectively and regularly is available	Performance Management Framework Residents Surveys Citizens Panels	PMF being reviewed 3013
1.2.2 Put in place effective arrangements to identify and deal with failure in service delivery	Performance Management Framework Complaints Procedure Monthly Financial Reports	
1.3.1 Decide how value for money is to be measured and make sure that the authority or partnership has the information needed to review value for money and performance	Use of Resources Assessment Procurement Strategy	Revised Procurement Strategy

effectively. Measure the environmental impact of policies, plans and decisions		
--	--	--

Core Principle 2 - Members and officers working together to achieve a common purpose with clearly defined functions and roles

Our aims in relation to Members and officers working together to achieve a common purpose with clearly defined functions and roles are to;

- 2.1 Ensure effective leadership throughout the authority and being clear about executive and non-executive functions and of the roles and responsibilities of the scrutiny function
- 2.2 Ensure that a constructive working relationship exists between authority members and officers and the responsibilities of members and officers and carried out to a high standard
- 2.3 Ensure relationships between the authority, its partners and the public are clear so that each knows what to expect of the other

In order to achieve our aims we will:	Source documents	Further work ongoing
2.1.1 Set out a clear statement of the respective roles and responsibilities of the Committee and of the Committee's members individually and the authority's approach towards putting this into practice	Constitution (Committee terms of reference) Record of decisions and supporting materials Member/Officer Protocol	The Constitution will continue to be reviewed on a rolling basis.
2.1.2 Set out a clear statement of the respective roles and responsibilities of other authority members, members generally and of senior officers	Constitution (Statutory Officer positions, Terms of Reference for Committees, Member roles) Scheme of delegation Conditions of employment	
2.2.1 Determine a scheme of delegation and reserve powers within the constitution, including a formal schedule of those matters specifically reserved for collective decision of the authority taking account of relevant legislation and ensure that it is monitored and updated when required	Constitution (Scheme of delegation) Statutory provisions	The Constitution will continue to be reviewed on a rolling basis.
2.2.2 Make a chief executive or equivalent responsible and accountable to the authority for all aspects of operational management	Chief Executive designated Head of paid Service Constitution (Head of Paid Service responsibilities) Conditions of employment Scheme of delegation Statutory provisions Job descriptions / specification Performance management system Signs Annual Governance Statement	The Constitution will continue to be reviewed on a rolling basis.
2.2.3 Develop protocols to ensure that the leader and chief executive (or equivalent) negotiate their respective roles early in the relationship and that a shared understanding of roles and objectives is maintained	Constitution Member/Officer Protocol	The Constitution will continue to be reviewed on a rolling basis.

2.2.4 Make a senior officer (usually the section 151 officer) responsible to the authority for ensuring that appropriate advice is given on all financial matters, for keeping proper financial records and accounts, and for maintaining an effective system of internal financial control	Director of Resources, Governance and Growth has been nominated as the Council's Chief Financial Officer. Constitution (Statutory Officers) Job description / specification Report template ensures consultation is undertaken with CFO before report considered by Members	
2.2.5 Make a senior officer (other than the responsible financial officer) responsible to the authority for ensuring that agreed procedures are followed and that all applicable statutes, regulations are complied with (usually the monitoring officer)	A solicitor at NPLAW has been nominated as the Council's Monitoring officer Constitution (Statutory Officers) Report template ensures consultation is undertaken with MO before report considered by Members	
2.3.1 Develop protocols to ensure effective communication between members and officers in their respective roles	Member / Officer protocol Outside Bodies advice given to Members Member/Officer Codes of Conduct	
2.3.2 Set out the terms and conditions for remuneration of members and officers and an effective structure for managing the process including an effective remuneration panel (if applicable)	Pay and conditions policies and practices Independent Remuneration Panel Terms of Reference and Report Pay and Policy Statement	Job Evaluation Scheme currently being implemented.
2.3.3 Ensure that effective mechanisms exist to monitor service delivery	Complaints Procedure	
2.3.4 Ensure that the organisation's vision, strategic plans, priorities and targets are developed through robust mechanisms, and in consultation with the local community and other key stakeholders, and that they are clearly articulated and disseminated	Medium Term Financial Strategy Consultation Website Corporate Plan	Corporate Plan being reviewed
2.3.5 When working in partnership ensure that members are clear about their roles and responsibilities both individually and collectively in relation to the partnership and to the authority	Constitution (Standing Orders) Individual Partnership agreements Service Level Arrangements Advice given to members in relation to outside bodies	A partnership toolkit is currently being developed. Procurement Strategy
2.3.6 When working in	Constitution Individual Partnership	A partnership toolkit is currently being developed

<p>partnership:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - ensure that there is clarity about the legal status of the partnership - ensure that representatives of organisations both understand and make clear to all other partners the extent of their authority to bind their organisation to partner decisions. 	<p>agreements</p> <p>Service Level Arrangements</p> <p>Advice given to members in relation to outside bodies</p>	<p>Procurement Strategy</p>
--	--	-----------------------------

Core Principle 3 - Promoting values for the authority and demonstrating the values of good governance through upholding high standards of conduct and behaviour

Our aims in relation to promoting values for the authority and demonstrating the values of good governance through upholding high standards of conduct and behaviour are to;

- 3.1 Ensuring authority members and officers exercise leadership by behaving in ways that exemplify high standards of conduct and effective governance
- 3.2 Ensuring that organisational values are put into practice and are effective

In order to achieve our aims we will;

<p>3.1.1 Ensure that the authority's leadership sets a tone for the organisation by creating a climate of openness, support and respect</p>	<p>Constitution (Standing Orders) Performance Review Standards Committee has an overall view of conduct issues established by their terms of reference Officer Code of Conduct Member Code of Conduct Member/Officer Protocol Whistle blowing Policy Anti Fraud and Corruption Policy Freedom of Information Policy statement and publication scheme Officer Register of gifts and hospitality Member Register of Interests</p>	<p>Implementation of new standards regime</p>
<p>3.1.2 Ensure that standards of conduct and personal behaviour expected of members and staff, of work between members and staff and between the authority, its partners and the community are defined and communicated through codes of conduct and protocols</p>	<p>Members / officers code of conduct Performance management system Performance appraisal Complaints procedures Antifraud and corruption policy Member / officer protocols Whistle blowing Policy ICT Security Policy</p>	
<p>3.1.3 Put in place arrangements to ensure that members and employees of the authority are not influenced by prejudice, bias or conflicts of interest in dealing with different stakeholders and put in place appropriate processes to ensure that they continue to operate in practice</p>	<p>Standing orders Member/Officer Codes of conduct Financial regulations Anti Fraud and Corruption Whistle blowing Register of Interests (officers and members) Officer induction and training</p>	
<p>3.2.1 Develop and maintain shared values including leadership values both for the organisation and staff reflecting public expectations and communicate these with members, staff, the community</p>	<p>Codes of conduct Corporate Plan</p>	

and partners		
3.2.2 Put in place arrangements to ensure that procedures and operations are designed in conformity with appropriate ethical standards, and monitor their continuing effectiveness in practice	Codes of conduct Contract Procedure Rules Anti Fraud and Corruption Whistle blowing ICT Security Policy	
3.2.3 Develop and maintain an effective standards committee	Agenda and minutes Terms of Reference Committee meets regularly Regular reporting to the authority	
3.2.4 Use the organisations shared values to act as a guide for decision making and as a basis for developing positive and trusting relationships within the authority	Decision making practices Corporate Plan	
3.2.5 In pursuing the vision of a partnership, agree a set of values against which decision making and actions can be judged. Such values must be demonstrated by partners' behaviour both individually and collectively		Protocols for partnership working are in the process of being developed

Core Principle 4 - Taking informed and transparent decisions which are subject to effective scrutiny and managing risk

Our aims in relation to taking informed and transparent decisions which are subject to effective scrutiny and managing risk are to;

- 4.1 Being rigorous and transparent about how decisions are taken and listening and acting on the outcomes of constructive scrutiny
- 4.2 Having good-quality information, advice and support to ensure that services are delivered effectively and are what the community wants/needs
- 4.3 Ensuring that an effective risk management system is in place
- 4.4 Using their legal powers to the full benefit of the citizens and communities in their area

In order to achieve our aims we will	Source documents/Processes	Further work ongoing
4.1.1 Develop and maintain an effective scrutiny function which encourages constructive challenge and enhances the organisation's performance overall and of any organisation for which it is responsible	Scrutiny is supported by robust evidence and data analysis Agenda and minutes Work programme Training	
4.1.2 Develop and maintain open and effective mechanisms for documenting evidence for decisions and recording the criteria, rationale and considerations on which decisions are based	Record of decisions and supporting materials Report template Decision list published	
4.1.3 Put in place arrangements to safeguard members and employees against conflicts of interest and put in place appropriate processes to ensure that they continue to operate in practice	Members Code of Conduct Officers Code of Conduct Officer/Member Register of Interests Declaration of Interests Code of Conduct Guidance to members/officers issued Standards Committee have responsibility for these issues	New Member / Officer Joining Pack
4.1.4 Develop and maintain an effective audit committee (or equivalent) which is independent or make other appropriate arrangements for the discharge of the functions of such a committee	Audit Committee Training Audit Committee Terms of reference Agenda and minutes	
4.1.5 Put in place effective transparent and accessible arrangements for dealing with complaints	Complaints procedure	
4.2.1 Ensure that those making decisions whether for the authority or partnership are provided with information that is fit for the purpose – relevant, timely and gives	Members' induction scheme Training Report templates	

clear explanations of technical issues and their implications		
4.2.2 Ensure that professional advice on matters that have legal or financial implications is available and recorded well in advance of decision making and used appropriately	Report template requires that consultation is undertaken with MO/s151 before report considered by Members Record of decision making and supporting materials	
4.3.1 Ensure that risk management is embedded into the culture of the organisation, with members and managers at all levels recognising that risk management is part of their job	Risk management strategy Financial standards and regulations	Risk self assessments to be undertaken Training required for officers and members (level of training to be decided depending on risk appetite)
4.3.2 Ensure that arrangements are in place for whistle blowing to which staff and all those contracting with the authority have access	Whistle blowing policy Register of whistle blowing reports and actions taken Information for contractors	
4.4.1 Actively recognise the limits of lawful activity placed on them by, for example the ultra vires doctrine but also strive to utilise powers to the full benefit of their communities	Constitution Statutory provision Report templates / positive sign-off - increased consultation at pre report stage will enable issues to be fully explored before report is put to members	
4.4.2 Recognise the limits of lawful action and observe both the specific requirements of legislation and the general responsibilities placed on local authorities by public law	Training Availability of professional legal advice Report templates / positive sign-off - increased consultation at pre report stage will enable issues to be fully explored before report is put to members	
4.4.3 Observe all specific legislative requirements placed upon them, as well as the requirements of general law, and in particular to integrate the key principles of good administrative law – rationality, legality and natural justice into their procedures and decision making processes	Standing Orders Report template Constitution Statutory provision	

Core Principle 5 - Developing the capacity and capability of members and officers to be effective

Our aims in relation to developing the capacity and capability of members and officers to be effective are:

- 5.1 Making sure that members and officers have the skills, knowledge, experience and resources they need to perform well in their roles
- 5.2 Developing the capability of people with governance responsibilities and evaluating their performance as an individual and as a group
- 5.3 Encouraging new talent for membership of the authority so that best use can be made of individuals' skills and resources in balancing continuity and renewal

In order to achieve our aims we will	Source documents/Processes	Further work ongoing
5.1.1 Provide induction programmes tailored to individual needs and opportunities for members and officers	Workforce Development Plan	
5.1.2 Ensure that the statutory officers have the skills, resources and support necessary to perform effectively in their roles and that these roles are properly understood throughout the organisation	Performance Review Training Induction Employee handbook	Employee handbook being reviewed Autumn 2012
5.2.1 Assess the skills required by members and officers and make a commitment to develop those skills to enable roles to be carried out effectively	Performance Review Member Training Workforce Development Plan Elearning	
5.2.2 Develop skills on a continuing basis to improve performance including the ability to scrutinise and challenge and to recognise when outside expert advice is needed	Performance Review Member Training Workforce Development Plan	
5.2.3 Ensure that effective arrangements are in place for reviewing the performance of the authority as a whole and of individual members and agreeing an action plan which might for example aim to address any training or development needs	Performance Management Workforce Development Plan Member Training	
5.3.1 Ensure that effective arrangements designed to encourage individuals from all	Residents panel structure	

sections of the community to engage with, contribute to and participate in the work of the authority		
--	--	--

Core principle 6 - Engaging with local people and other stakeholders to ensure robust public accountability

Our aims in relation to engaging with local people and other stakeholders to ensure robust public accountability are to;

- 6.1 Exercise leadership through a robust scrutiny function which engages effectively with local people and all local institutional stakeholders, including partnerships, and develops constructive accountability relationships
- 6.2 Take an active and planned approach to dialogue with and accountability to the public ensure effective and appropriate service delivery whether directly, in partnership or by commissioning
- 6.3 Make best use of human resources by taking an active and planned approach to meet responsibility to staff

In order to achieve our aims Scrutiny Committee will	Source documents/Processes	Further work ongoing
6.1.1 Make clear to themselves, all staff and the community, to whom they are accountable and for what	Constitution Stakeholder identification	
6.1.2 Consider those institutional stakeholders to whom they are accountable and assess the effectiveness of the relationships and any changes required	Statutory provisions	
6.1.3 Produce an annual report on scrutiny function activity	Annual report	
6.2.1 Ensure that clear channels of communication are in place with all sections of the community and other stakeholders including monitoring arrangements to ensure that they operate effectively		
6.2.2 Hold meetings in public unless there are good reasons for confidentiality	Constitution Access to information rules	
6.2.3 Ensure arrangements are in place to enable the authority to engage with all sections of the community effectively. These arrangements should recognise that different sections of the community have different priorities and establish explicit processes for dealing with these competing demands	Budget Consultation Meeting Corporate Plan	Corporate Plan being reviewed
6.2.4 Establish a clear policy on the types of issues they will meaningfully consult on or		Partnership toolkit being developed

engage with the public and service users including a feedback mechanism for those consultees to demonstrate what has changed as a result		
6.2.5 On an annual basis, publish a performance plan giving information on the authority's vision, strategy, plans and financial statements as well as information about its outcomes, achievements and the satisfaction of service users in the previous period	Annual financial statements Corporate Plan Annual Performance Report	Corporate Plan being updated
6.2.6 Ensure that the authority as a whole is open and accessible to the community, service users and its staff and ensure that it has made a commitment to openness and transparency in all its dealings, including partnerships subject only to the need to preserve confidentiality in those specific circumstances where it is proper and appropriate to do so	Constitution Customer service standards Freedom of Information Act/Publication Scheme Officer Code of Conduct Member Code of Conduct Training undertaken Whistle blowing Policy Anti Fraud and Corruption Policy Data Protection Policy ICT Security Policy	
6.3.1 Develop and maintain a clear policy on how staff and their representatives are consulted and involved in decision making	Constitution	

APPENDIX

GREAT YARMOUTH BOROUGH COUNCIL

MEMBERS' JOB DESCRIPTIONS

Job descriptions are attached as follows:

- (1) All Councillors**
- (2) Mayor**
- (3) Leader of the Council**
 - (a) Leader of the Council;
 - (b) Deputy Leader of the Council;
 - (c) General Roles and Responsibilities and all committee Chair Holders;
- (4)**
- (5) Committee Chairman**
- (6) Group Leaders**

**Agreed by Executive
on 20 July 2005
and Revised on 4 April 2008**

COUNCILLOR

1. Purposes

- 1.1 To participate constructively in the good government of the area.
- 1.2 To contribute actively to the formation and scrutiny of the authority's priorities, policies, budget, strategies and service delivery.
- 1.3 As a community leader, to represent effectively the interests of the Ward for which the Councillor was elected and deal with constituent's enquiries and representations.
- 1.4 To champion the causes which are best related to the interests and sustainability of the community and campaign for improvement in the quality of life of the community in terms of diversity, safety, wellbeing, economy and environment.
- 1.5 To act as a champion of the Council for specific issues when required.
- 1.6 To represent the Council on outside bodies, such as a governing body or multi-agency group.
- 1.7 To assist, as they are able, the Mayor in the civic life of the Borough.

2. Key Tasks (in order of priority)

- 2.1 To fulfil the statutory and locally determined requirements of an elected Member of a local authority and the authority itself, including compliance with all relevant codes of conduct and participation in those decisions and activities reserved to the full Council (eg setting budget, overall priorities and strategy).
- 2.2 To participate effectively as a Member of any Committee, Working Group etc to which the Councillor is appointed.
- 2.3 To participate in the activities of an outside body to which the Councillor is appointed, providing two-way communication between organisations; and to develop and maintain a working knowledge of the authority's policies and practices in relation to that body and of the community's needs and aspirations in respect of that body's role and function.
- 2.4 To participate, as appointed, in the scrutiny of the services and policies of the authority and their effectiveness in meeting the strategic objectives of the authority and the needs of its residents.
- 2.5 To participate in consultative processes with the community and other organisations.

- 2.6 To act as a consultee on matters within their ward where executive and regulatory functions have been delegated to officers.
- 2.7 To develop and maintain a working knowledge of the authority's services, management arrangements, powers/duties and constraints and to develop good working relationships with relevant officers of the authority.
- 2.8 To participate fully in Councillor training and development programmes, especially those relating to statutory requirements.
- 2.9 To develop and maintain a working knowledge of the organisations, services, activities and other factors which impact upon the community's well being and identity .
- 2.10 To promote and explain the work of the Council in their communities, including liaison with Parish Councils.
- 2.11 To contribute constructively to open government and democratic renewal through active encouragement to the community to participate generally in the government of the area.
- 2.12 To participate in the activities of any political group of which the Councillor is a member.
- 2.13 To uphold the Council's Constitution and to abide by the Councillor's Code of Conduct.

MAYOR

1. Overview

- 1.1 The Mayor, and in his/her absence, the Deputy Mayor, has two main roles: a ceremonial role; and a procedural role.

2. Ceremonial Responsibilities

- 2.1 To represent the whole Borough during his/her term of office.
- 2.2 To promote public involvement in the Council's activities.
- 2.3 As the first citizen of the Borough of Great Yarmouth, to perform an ambassadorial role both inside and outside the Borough and to attend such civic and ceremonial functions as the Council or (s) he determines appropriate.
- 2.4 To promote the Borough of Great Yarmouth in a positive manner.
- 2.5 To act as a link between the Council and various groups and organisations.

3. Procedural Responsibilities

- 3.1 To preside over meetings of the Council so that its business can be carried out efficiently and with regard to the rights of Councillors and the interests of the community.
- 3.2 To uphold and promote the purposes of the Constitution, and to interpret rules of procedure at full Council meetings.
- 3.3 To ensure that the Council meeting is a forum for the debate of matters of concern to the local community..
- 3.4 To call meetings of the full Council in addition to ordinary meetings.
- 3.5 To receive recommendations from Committees.
- 3.6 To carry out the duties identified in the job description for Councillors.

LEADER OF THE COUNCIL

1.

COMMITTEE CHAIRMAN

*(This Job Description **excludes** the Standards Committee,. Although aimed at the other formal Committees, it does also apply to working parties.)*

1. General Responsibilities

1.1 The Chairman of a Committee is responsible for the effective management of the Committee's business. In addition to the specific duties below, this involves:-

- (a) ensuring the overall effectiveness of the Committee, including agenda planning;
- (b) maintaining a public image that the work of the Committee is effectively managed; and
- (c) ensuring that Committee Members are full involved in the deliberations of the Committee.

2. Specific duties include:

2.1 To have a working knowledge of the Council's relevant policies and strategies and ensure he/she is sufficiently and effectively briefed on matters coming before the Committee.

2.2 To chair meetings of the Committee in accordance with the principles of decision-making in the Constitution, and with regard to any other statutory, constitutional or procedural requirements.

2.3 To present to the Council any reports of the Committee.

2.4 To act where appropriate, as an external spokesperson and representative of the Committee if required.

2.5 To monitor progress in respect of any work programmes or performance targets for the Committee, and report as necessary.

2.6 Where specified by the Constitution, to act as a consultee for any functions of the Committee which have been delegated to officers.

2.7 To liaise with the Chairman of other committees, as necessary, to ensure the proper coordination of Council business.

2.8 To ensure appropriate expert and specialist advice is made available to the Committee.

2.9 To consider requests for items to be considered in cases of special urgency.

2.10 To determine arrangements for special meetings of the Committee.

2.11 To ensure Committee Members benefit from appropriate training and development to deal effectively with the Committee's business.

2.12 To carry out the duties identified in the job description for Councillors.

GROUP LEADERS

1. Overview

- 1.1 The Council recognises the key leadership role played by the leaders of all groups on the Council, and the importance of their commitment to cross-party working.
- 1.2 In recognising this role, the Council will ensure that group leaders have access to appropriate support and advice from officers in accordance with the Protocol for Member/Officer Relations.

2. Specific duties include:

- 2.1 To provide leadership to their party group.
- 2.2 To ensure their group contributes effectively, positively and constructively to the Council's activities.
- 2.3 To instil a sense of responsibility and accountability amongst members of their group.
- 2.4 To assist in ensuring appropriate standards and levels of attendance are maintained and, in this respect, to act as the first point of reference for their group.
- 2.5 To act as the principal political spokesman for their group.
- 2.6 To represent their group as required, including as a consultee if required.
- 2.7 To nominate members of their group to serve on committees, working parties, panels and outside bodies in accordance with the political balance rules.
- 2.8 To act as a consultee if consultation with group leaders is required on any matter.
- 2.9 To encourage a culture of learning and development among Members of the Council, including the active participation of their group in briefings, seminars and training events, and to liaise with the officers in respect of specific needs of members of their group.
- 2.10 To carry out the duties identified in the job description for Councillors.

GREAT YARMOUTH BOROUGH COUNCIL PETITIONS SCHEME

Petitions

The Council welcomes petitions and recognises that petitions are one way in which people can let us know their concerns. All petitions sent or presented to the Council will receive an acknowledgement from the Council within ten working days of receipt. This acknowledgement will set out what we plan to do with the petition. We will treat something as a petition if it is identified as being a petition, or if it seems to us that it is intended to be a petition, provided it is signed by at least 20 people.

Paper petitions can be sent to:-

The Committee Secretary and Deputy Monitoring Officer

**Town Hall
GREAT YARMOUTH
NR30 2QF**

People can also create, sign and submit petitions on line.

Petitions can also be presented to a meeting of the Council. These meetings take place approximately six times a year. If you would like to present your petition to the Council, or would like your Councillor or someone else to present it on your behalf, please contact the Member Services Manager on Tel: 01493 846325 at least ten working days before the meeting and they will talk you through the process. If your petition has received 900 signatures or more it will also be scheduled for a Council debate and if this is the case we will let you know whether this will happen at the same meeting or a later meeting of the Council.

What are the guidelines for submitting a petition?

Petitions submitted to the Council must include:-

- A clear and concise statement covering the subject of the petition. It should state what action the petitioners wish the Council to take
- The name and address and signature of any person supporting the petition.

Petitions should be accompanied by contact details, including an address, for the petition organiser. This is the person we will contact to explain how we will respond to the petition. The contact details of the petition organiser will not be placed on the website. If the petition does not identify a petition organiser, we will contact signatories to the petition to agree who should act as the petition organiser.

Petitions which are considered to be vexatious, abusive or otherwise inappropriate will not be accepted. In the period immediately before an election or referendum we may need to deal with your petition differently – if this is the case we will explain the reasons and discuss the revised timescale which will apply. If a petition does not

follow the guidelines set out above, the Council may decide not to do anything further with it. In that case, we will write to you to explain the reasons.

What will the Council do when it receives my petition?

An acknowledgement will be sent to the petition organiser within ten working days of receiving the petition. It will let them know what we plan to do with the petition and when they can expect to hear from us again. It will also be published on our website.

If we can do what your petition asks for, the acknowledgement may confirm that we have taken the action requested and the petition will be closed. If the petition has enough signatures to trigger a Council debate, or a Senior Officer giving evidence, then the acknowledgement will confirm this and tell you when and where the meeting will take place. If the petition needs more investigation, we will tell you the steps we plan to take.

If the petition applies to a planning or licensing application, is a statutory petition (for example requesting a referendum on having an elected mayor), or on a matter where there is already an existing right of appeal, such as Council Tax banding and Non-Domestic Rates, other procedures apply. Further information on all these procedures and how you can express your views is available from the Member Services Manager on Tel: 01493 846325.

We will not take action on any petition which we consider to be vexatious, abusive or otherwise inappropriate and will explain the reasons for this in our acknowledgement of the petition.

To ensure that people know what we are doing in response to the petitions we receive the details of all the petitions submitted to us will be published on our website, except in cases where this would be inappropriate. Whenever possible we will also publish all correspondence relating to the petition (all personal details will be removed). When you sign an e-petition you can elect to receive this information by e-mail. We will not send you anything which is not relevant to the e-petition you have signed, unless you choose to receive other e-mails from us.

How will the Council respond to petitions?

Our response to a petition will depend on what a petition asks for and how many people have signed it, but may include one or more of the following:-

- Taking the action requested in the petition
- Considering the petition at a Council meeting
- Holding an inquiry into the matter
- Holding a public meeting
- Holding a consultation

- Holding a meeting with petitioners
- Referring the petition for consideration by the Council's Scrutiny Committee*
- Calling a referendum
- Writing to the petition organiser setting out our views about the request in the petition.

*Scrutiny Committees are committees of Councillors who are responsible for scrutinising the work of the Council – in other words, Scrutiny Committee has the power to hold the Council's decision makers to account.

In addition to these steps, the Council will consider all the specific actions it can potentially take on the issues highlighted in a petition.

If your petition is about something over which the Council has no direct control (for example the local railway or hospital) we will consider making representations on behalf of the community to the relevant body. The Council works with a large number of local partners and where possible will work with these partners to respond to your petition. If we are not able to do this for any reason (for example if what the petition calls for conflicts with Council policy), then we will set out the reasons for this to you. You can find more information on the services for which the Council is responsible on the Council's website.

If your petition is about something that a different council is responsible for we will give consideration to what the best method is for responding to it. This might consist of simply forwarding the petition to the other council, but could involve other steps. In any event we will always notify you of the action we have taken.

Full Council Debates

If a petition contains more than 900 signatures it will be debated by the full Council unless it is a petition asking for a Senior Council Officer to give evidence at a public meeting. This means that the issue raised in the petition will be discussed at a meeting which all Councillors can attend. The Council will endeavour to consider the petition at its next meeting, although on some occasions this may not be possible and consideration will then take place at the following meeting. The petition organiser will be given ten minutes to present the petition at the meeting and the petition will then be discussed by Councillors for a maximum of 20 minutes. The Council will decide how to respond to the petition at this meeting. They may decide to take the action the petition requests, not to take the action requested for reasons put forward in the debate, or to commission further investigation into the matter for example by a relevant committee. The petition organiser will receive written confirmation of this decision. This confirmation will also be published on our website.

Officer Evidence

Your petition may ask for a Senior Council Officer to give evidence at a public meeting about something for which the officer is responsible as part of their job. For

example, your petition may ask a Senior Council Officer to explain progress on an issue, or to explain the advice to elected Members to enable them to make a particular decision.

If your petition contains at least 450 signatures, the relevant Senior Officer will give evidence at a public meeting of the Council's Relevant Committee. The senior staff that can be called to give evidence are the Chief Executive, Directors, Group Managers and Service Unit Managers. You should be aware that the Relevant Committee may decide that it would be more appropriate for another officer to give evidence instead of any officer named in the petition – for instance if the named officer has changed jobs. The Committee may also decide to call the relevant Councillor to attend the meeting. Committee Members will ask the questions at this meeting, but you will be able to suggest questions to the Chair of the Committee by contacting the Member Services Manager up to three working days before the meeting.

E-petitions

The Council welcomes e-petitioners which are created and submitted through our website. E-petitions must follow the same guidelines as paper petitions. The petition organiser will need to provide us with their name, postal address and e-mail address. You will also need to decide how long you would like your petition to be open for signatures. Most petitions run for six months, but you can choose a shorter or longer timeframe, up to a maximum of 12 months. E-petitions can be submitted from 15 December 2010.

When you create an e-petition, it may take five working days before it is published online. This is because we have to check that the content of your petition is suitable before it is made available for signature.

If we feel we cannot publish your petition for some reason, we will contact you within this time to explain. You will be able to change and re-submit your petition if you wish. If you do not do this within ten working days, a summary of the petition and the reason why it has not been accepted will be published under the 'rejected petitions' section of the website.

When an e-petition has closed for signature, it will automatically be submitted to the Member Services Manager. In the same way as a paper petition, you will receive an acknowledgement within ten working days. If you would like to present your e-petition to a meeting of the Council, please contact the Member Services Manager within ten working days of receipt of the acknowledgement.

A petition acknowledgement and response will be e-mailed to everyone who has signed the e-petition and elected to receive this information. The acknowledgement and response will also be published on this website.

How do I 'sign' an e-petition?

When you sign an e-petition you will be asked to provide your name, your postcode and a valid e-mail address. When you have submitted this information you will be sent an e-mail to the e-mail address you have provided. This e-mail will include a link which you must click on in order to confirm the e-mail address is valid. Once this step is complete your 'signature' will be added to the petition. People visiting the e-petition will be able to see your name in the list of those who have signed it but your contact details will not be visible.

What can I do if I feel my petition has not been dealt with properly?

If you feel that we have not dealt with your petition properly, the petition organiser has the right to request that the Council's Policy and Resources Committee review the steps that the Council has taken in response to your petition. It is helpful to everyone, and can improve the prospects for a review if the petition organiser gives a short explanation of the reasons why the Council's response is not considered to be adequate.

The Committee will endeavour to consider your request at its next meeting, although on some occasions this may not be possible and consideration will take place at the following meeting. Should the Committee determine we have not dealt with your petition adequately, it may use any of its powers to deal with the matter. These powers include instigating an investigation, making recommendations for the matter to be considered at a meeting of the full Council or one of its committees

Once the appeal has been considered the petition organiser will be informed of the results within five working days. The results of the review will also be published on our website.

Approved by Committee on 25 August 2010 and Council on 2 September 2010.

Committee	Membership	Functions	Delegation of Functions
Standards Committee	5 Members of the authority (and two non-voting members of a Parish Council wholly or mainly in the council area)	<p>The promotion and maintenance of high standards of conduct within the Council</p> <p>To advise the Council on the adoption or revision of its Code of Conduct</p> <p>To monitor and advise the Council about the operation of its Code of Conduct in the light of best practice, changes in the law, guidance from the Standards Board and recommendations of case tribunals under Section 80 of the Local Government Act 2000</p> <p>Assistance to Members of the authority</p> <p>To ensure that all Members of the Council have access to training in all aspects of the Members' Code of Conduct, that this training is actively promoted and that Members are aware of the standards expected from local Councillors under the Code</p> <p>Other Functions</p> <p>Functions relating to standard of conduct of Members under any relevant provision of, or regulations made</p>	

Committee	Membership	Functions	Delegation of Functions
		<p>under, the Local Government Act 2000</p> <p>Overview of complaints handling and Ombudsman investigations</p> <p>Oversight of the Constitution</p> <p>Power to make payments or provide other benefits in cases of maladministration</p>	
Appeals Committee	5 Members of the authority	<p>To consider appeals against disciplinary decisions from employees of the authority in accordance with the provisions of the Council's disciplinary procedure</p> <p>To consider appeals against decision to dismiss which are not of a disciplinary nature but which have been made for other reasons (eg long term ill-health)</p> <p>To consider unresolved grievances from employees under the Council's grievance procedure</p> <p>To deal with grading appeals from employees in accordance with the Council's agreed procedure for regrading applications</p>	

Committee	Membership	Functions	Delegation of Functions
Housing Appeals	3 Members of the authority or such other number as may be determined from time to time by Council	To consider appeals on housing management decisions other than decisions on Eviction and Nuisance Orders	
Council	Full Council	Functions relating to Elections Functions relating to elections as set out in Schedule 1 to the Local Authorities (Functions and Responsibilities) (England) Regulations 2000, as amended (“the Function Regulations”)	Delegated to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
Council	Full Council	Functions relating to name and status of areas and individuals The functions as set out in Schedule 1 to the Functions Regulations	
Council	Full Council	Power to make, amend, revoke or re-enact byelaws	
Council	Full Council	Power to promote or oppose local or personal Bills	
Council	Full Council	Functions relating to pensions etc The functions relating to pensions as set out in Schedule 1 of the Functions Regulations	Delegated to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth with power to act
Council	Full Council	Approval of the authority’s statement of accounts, income and expenditure and balance sheet or record of payments and receipts (as the case may be)	

Committee	Membership	Functions	Delegation of Functions
Council	Full Council	Power to make Standing Orders	
Council	Full Council	Power to make Standing Orders as to contracts	
Council	Full Council	Power to appoint staff	Delegated to Head of Paid Service save where member involvement is required by law
Council	Full Council	Power to determine the terms and conditions on which staff hold office (including procedures for their dismissal)	Delegated to the Director of Resources, Governance and Growth provided UNISON are in agreement with the proposals and there is no material cost to the Council
Council	Full Council	Duty to make arrangements for proper administration of financial affairs	Delegated to Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
Council	Full Council	Power to appoint Officers for particular purposes (appointment of "proper Officers")	See Article 12.8 for general appointments
Council	Full Council	Power to make closing orders with respect to take-away food shops	Delegated to Director of Customer Services
Council	Full Council	Duty to designate Officer as the Head of the authority's Paid Service, and to provide staff, etc	
Council	Full Council	Duty to designate Officer as the Monitoring Officer and to provide staff	
Council	Full Council	Power to make payments or provide other benefits in case of maladministration	

3.

APPENDIX A

A. Services and Responsibilities of Directors

The current services and responsibilities of Directors are those as set out below:-

Service	Responsible to	Responsible to
Chief Executive - Corporate Strategy,	Council	Council
Housing and Neighbourhoods	Director of Housing and Neighbourhoods	Chief Executive

- Neighbourhood Management
 - Area Committees
 - Leisure and Culture
 - Play Strategy
 - Partnerships
 - Community Safety
 - Employment and Skills
 - Tenant Involvement
- Group Manager: Neighbourhood and Communities
- Director of Housing and Neighbourhoods
-
- Tenancy Services / Estate Management
 - Housing Options and Strategy
 - Empty Homes
- Group Manager: Housing Customers
- Director of Housing and Neighbourhoods
-
- Housing Finance
 - Rents
 - Business Planning
 - Maintenance and Improvement / Housing Capital Programme
- Group Manager: Housing Assets
- Director of Housing and Neighbourhoods
-
- Older Peoples Services and Supporting People
 - Adaptations
 - DFGs and HIA Homes for Health
- Group Manager: Housing Health and Wellbeing
- Director of Housing and Neighbourhoods
-

**Resources ,
Governance and
Growth**

**Director of Resources, Governance and
Growth**

Chief Executive

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Finance - Payroll - HR - Audit (Client) - Revenues 	Group Manager: Resources	Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Strategic Planning - Economic Development - Enterprise GY 	Group Manager: Growth	Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Markets - Property Services - Conservation - Construction Services 	Group Manager; Property and Construction	Director of Resources, Governance and Growth
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Member Services - Scrutiny - Secretariat - Mayoralty - Policy and Performance - Elections - Some Licensing - Legal (Client) - FOI / Data Protection 	Group Manager: Governance	Director of Resources, Governance and Growth

Customer Services

Director of Customer Services

Chief Executive

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Development Control - Building Control - Coastal Protection - Land Charges 	Group Manager: Planning	Director of Customer Services
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Some Licensing - Food Hygiene - Noise Nuisance - ASB - Environmental Policy - Emergency Planning - Health and Safety - Seafront Management - Depot Services(Client) - Enviro-community Engagement 	Group Manager: Environmental Services	Director of Customer Services
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Benefits - Customer Services - Crematorium - Cashiers - Car Park - ICT (Client) 	Group Manager: Customer Services	Director of Customer Services
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Tourism GYTA - Marketing and Events - Reprographics - Press - Town Centre Partnership - Facilities Management 	Group manager: Tourism and Marketing	Director of Customer Services
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Depot Services 	Direct Report	Director of Customer Services

In addition to the services and responsibilities specified in Service Plans, the following functions have been specifically allocated, as follows:

Chief Officer	Function
Chief Executive	Authorisation of Approved Duties in urgent cases in consultation with Leader and Shadow Leader

Director of Housing and Neighbourhoods

All action under the Crime and Disorder Act, 1998

Director of Resources Governance and Growth

Power to act to make orders under Section 14A of the Public Order Act 1986. Miscellaneous grants from the Helping Hand Fund.

